First-Year Greek Overheads

John C. Beckman, version 2003.09.17

Designed to be used with:

William D. Mounce, *Basics of Biblical Greek* (Zondervan, 1993) 1st Edition.

With additional information from:

William D. Mounce, *The Morphology of Biblical Greek* (Zondervan, 1994)

**Herbert Weir Smyth, *Greek Grammar*, rev. Gordon M. Messing (Harvard University Press, 1956)**

Daniel B. Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics* (Zondervan, 1996)

David Alan Black, *It's Still Greek to Me* (Baker, 1998)

Lee M. Fields, *Those Pesky Contract Verbs*, Paper presented at ETS national meeting, 2001

Road Map For the Year:
Introduction, Then Nouns, Then Verbs

- **0-4: Introductory matters**

- **5-14: Nouns, etc.**

- **15-35: Verbs**
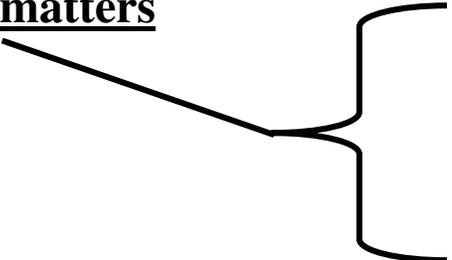
- **0: Should You Take this Class?**
- **1: Greek Language**
- **2: Learning Greek**
- **3: The Alphabet and Pronunciation**
- **4: Punctuation and Syllabification**

Should You Take This Class?
Count the Cost

Luke 14:27 ὅστις οὐ βαστάζει τὸν σταυρὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἔρχεται ὀπίσω μου, οὐ δύναται εἶναί μου μαθητής. **28** Τίς γὰρ ἐξ ὑμῶν θέλων πύργον οἰκοδομῆσαι οὐχὶ πρῶτον καθίσας ψηφίζει τὴν δαπάνην, εἰ ἔχει εἰς ἀπαρτισμόν; **29** ἵνα μήποτε θέντος αὐτοῦ θεμέλιον καὶ μὴ ἰσχύοντος ἐκτελέσαι πάντες οἱ θεωροῦντες ἄρξωνται αὐτῷ ἐμπαίζειν **30** λέγοντες ὅτι οὗτος ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἤρξατο οἰκοδομεῖν καὶ οὐκ ἴσχυσεν ἐκτελέσαι.

Should You Take This Class?
Count the Time Cost

- **Class time:**
  - **Class meets 6-8 PM every Tuesday from September through May.**
  - **Two week break for Christmas.**
  - **If you will miss more than a few classes, it may be difficult to keep up.**
- **Homework:**
  - **Different students spend 3-10 hours outside of class each week.**
  - **Much to put in long-term memory.**
- **Years to come:**
  - **You should take second year Greek next year to be less dangerous.**
  - **You should take third year Greek the following year to be able to do solid exegesis in Greek.**
  - **If you do not use it regularly thereafter, you will forget the vocabulary and parsing keys you have memorized, and you will have wasted the time God has entrusted to you.**

Should You Take This Class?
Count the Financial Cost

- **Tuition need not be a barrier**
  - **$100 tuition for first semester due at first class in October.**
  - **$100 tuition for first semester due at first class in January.**
  - **Makes checks payable to Bethlehem Baptist Church.**
  - **If you cannot afford the tuition, late payment and/or a scholarship can be arranged. We will not let tuition keep anyone out.**
- **Books are required:**
  - **William Mounce, *Basics of Biblical Greek* (Zondervan, 1993)**
  - **William Mounce, *Basics of Biblical Greek Workbook* (Zondervan, 1993)**
  - **Course reader packet (Bethlehem, 2002)**
  - **You may be able to buy used copies of the textbook and workbook.**
  - **The course reader is sold at the cost of reproduction.**

Should You Take This Class?
You Can Drop It

- **September is tuition-free**
  - **Try it and drop it**
  - **You will still have spent the money on the books.**
    - **You may be able to sell your books to another student.**

- **You can drop after the first semester**
  - **You've only spent $100 on tuition instead of $200.**

Should You Learn Greek Another Way?

- **Unaccredited:**
  - **No transcript**
  - **No grade unless requested**
  - **No transfer credit**
  - **High-school credit may be possible**
- **Not part of any degree program:**
  - **You may be able to test out of Greek at a seminary, but generally you will then need to substitute another class, so it won't shorten your degree, although it should allow you to take more advanced Greek.**
- **Alternative ways of learning Greek exist:**
  - **Seminary, College, or University programs count towards degrees, are transferable, and may have more experienced teachers. But they are more expensive and some schools may be less God-focused.**
  - **Learning Greek on your own is cheaper and more flexible, but most people need the help, encouragement, and external discipline.**
  - **A baby Greek class is less work and leaves you dependent on tools, but is a better choice for most people. Try TBI's baby Greek class.**

It Is Poor Stewardship of Time
For Most People to Take This Class

- **For most Christians,**
  - **spending this much time memorizing and maintaining their Greek would be poor stewardship of time, and**
  - **their time would be better spent in ministry and perhaps a baby-Greek class that doesn't memorize vocabulary or parsing.**
- **But for some Christians, it would be poor stewardship <u>not</u> to learn Greek.**
- **Which are you?**
  - **Is God calling you to spend more time studying the Bible than He calls most Christians to do?**
  - **Do you have an unusual delight in studying the details of the Bible?**
  - **Is God calling you to teach from the Bible regularly?**
  - **Is God calling you to be a Bible translator?**
  - **Do you have spare time that would otherwise be spent on less useful things?**

•**"Do you inquire what use there is in learning the languages?…** Do you say, "We can read the Bible very well in German"?… in our days there are some who… do not think the languages of any use; but although their doctrine is good, they have often erred in the real meaning of the sacred text; they are without arms against error, and I fear much that their faith will not remain pure."

•"If the languages had not made me positive as to the true meaning of the word, I might have still remained a chained monk, engaged in quietly preaching Romish errors in the obscurity of a cloister."

–Martin Luther

Our English Translations are Quite Good.
Why Pay the Cost of Learning Greek?

- Ambiguities in English may be clear in the original Greek.

- What is ambiguous in the original Greek may be clear (and incorrect) in English because there was no concise way to translate into English while leaving the ambiguities intact.

  - The semantic range of an English word or grammatical structure is rarely the same as the Greek word or structure that it replaces.

- Details of tense, conjunction, and vocabulary repetition may be lost in translation.

- Knowledge of the languages allows you to understand and evaluate commentaries and articles that refer to the languages.

- People cannot pull rank on you, saying, "in the Greek it says…"

- You can gain more confidence that you have understood the Bible correctly – confidence to help you take tough stands.

- You may feel more comforted and more confronted when you know that you are reading the very words of Paul.

1 μακάριος ἀνήρ ὃς οὐκ ἐπορεύθη ἐν βουλῇ ἀσεβῶν καὶ ἐν ὁδῷ ἁμαρτωλῶν οὐκ ἔστη καὶ ἐπὶ καθέδραν λοιμῶν οὐκ ἐκάθισεν **2** ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἐν τῷ νόμῳ κυρίου τὸ θέλημα αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐν τῷ νόμῳ αὐτοῦ μελετήσει ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτός **3** καὶ ἔσται ὡς τὸ ξύλον τὸ πεφυτευμένον παρὰ τὰς διεξόδους τῶν ὑδάτων ὃ τὸν καρπὸν αὐτοῦ δώσει ἐν καιρῷ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὸ φύλλον αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἀπορρυήσεται καὶ πάντα ὅσα ἂν ποιῇ κατευοδωθήσεται

Goals of this Class

- **Students who finish the class successfully will:**
    - **be able to read the New Testament with periodic help from a dictionary ("lexicon") for less common words and periodic help from a parsing tool for irregular inflected forms,**
    - **be able to understand discussions of Greek words and grammar in commentaries, articles, and sermons,**
    - **be able to use an intermediate Greek grammar (e.g. Daniel Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*, Zondervan 1996), a concordance, and a lexicon to evaluate such discussions,**
    - **have covered the material expected for a first-year Greek class in seminary, and**
    - **be able to pass the TBI Track 2 entrance exam.**
        - **The final exam for this class was written by Scott Haffeman and is used as the practice version of the TBI Track 2 entrance exam.**

The New Testament, Septuagint, and Patristic Literature Were Written in Koine Greek

- Many Greek dialects prior to Alexander the Great (4th century B.C.).
- "Koine" (κοινή) means "common."
  - Koine Greek (a.k.a. Hellenistic Greek) was the common language of Alexander's empire. It was Alexander's Attic Greek after being informally simplified to function as a second language, and after mixing in bits of other Greek dialects.
  - Attic Greek was the language of Athens (Plato and Aristotle). You can puzzle out parts of Plato, etc. by knowing Koine, but to really read Plato, you need to study "Classical Greek."
  - The New Testament was written in the common, everyday trade language of the eastern Mediterranean. This was not the scholarly language, but the language of the common people. And it was the *lingua Franca* of the day.
- Modern Greek has two forms:
  - Καθαρεύουσα ("Katharevusa" = purifying) is the written form, spoken only in Parliament and the Greek Orthodox church, that attempts to resurrect classical Greek.
  - Δημοτική ("Demotic" = vernacular) is the normal spoken form, and the direct descendent of Koine Greek.

Learning Greek:
Class Format

- **Office hour**
  - **Optional**
  - **In the classroom**
  - **The hour before class (5 – 6 PM)**
  - **No appointment necessary**
- **Other office hours can be arranged**
- **Class from 6 to 8 PM every Tuesday**
  - **Sing, pray, and devotional from the Greek Bible.**
  - **Review last week's material.**
  - **Discuss any issues with the quiz, workbook, or reading on last week's material.**
  - **Lecture and drill on the new material.**
- **Most of the work for the class is done outside of class.**
  - **Expect to spend 3 to 10 hours each week outside of class, depending on how fast you learn the concepts and memorize the material.**

Learning Greek:
Study Suggestions

- **Read each chapter, the notes, and the overheads at least three times.**
- **If you have questions, email them to both of us!**
  - **Or try giving one of us (or a fellow student) a call.**
- **Do not get behind!**
  - **The material comes so fast that it is tough to catch up.**
- **If you get behind,**
  - **skip the parts you missed, and**
  - **use the review weeks to learn the things you skipped.**
- **For most people, a little every day is far better than cramming.**
- **Develop a system for learning and reviewing vocabulary.**
  - **Mounce has a "FlashWorks" program for MS Windows.**
- **Continually review old material and vocabulary.**

Learning Greek:
More Study Suggestions

- **Memorize the study guide (the vocabulary, parsing, and grammar for the chapter) BEFORE doing the workbook.**
  - **That way the workbook serves as a check on your understanding and memory.**
- **Use the answer key to the workbook to check yourself right AFTER you complete each item in the workbook.**
  - **If you don't WRITE DOWN a complete answer to a workbook item before looking at the workbook answer key, you may cheat yourself out of learning Greek.**
- **If you're confident that you have the concept of the workbook exercises, you needn't do them all, although skipping some will lose some "inductive learning" given through the footnotes.**
- **Read the new chapter, lecture notes, and study guide before class so that you have seen the material before the lecture.**

Learning Greek:
Suggested Study Schedule

Wed	• Reread the overheads, chapter, notes, and quiz answer key covered in yesterday's class. • Make cards for the new vocabulary words.
Thu	• Memorize the new vocabulary. • Review old vocabulary.
Fri	• Memorize the quiz answer key for the week. • Review all vocabulary.
Sat	• Reread the overheads and chapter for the week. • Review the quiz answer key for the week and check that it's memorized. • Do the workbook exercises. • Review all vocabulary.
Mon	• Finish the workbook exercises if not already finished. • Review all vocabulary and quiz answer keys.
Tue	• Take the quiz closed book and then grade it. • Read the new overheads, chapter, notes, and quiz answer key before class. • Come to class. Come early for office hours if you have questions.

24 Letters in the Greek Alphabet

Name	Alpha	Beta	Gamma	Delta	Epsilon	Zeta	Eta	Theta	Iota	Kappa	Lambda	Mu
L Case	α	β	γ	δ	ϵ	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ
U Case	A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H	Θ	I	K	Λ	M
Translit	a	b	g	d	e	z	ē	th	i	k	l	m
Sound	father	Bible	gone	dog	met	daze	obey	thing	hit	kit	law	mom

Name	Nu	Xsi or Xi	Omicron	Pi	Rho	Sigma	Tau	Upsilon	Phi	Chi	Psi	Omega
L Case	ν	ξ	o	π	ρ	σ ς	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω
U Case	N	Ξ	O	Π	P	Σ	T	Y	Φ	X	Ψ	Ω
Translit	n	xs or x	o	p	r	s	t	u or y	ph	ch	ps	ō
Sound	new	axe	not	peach	rod	study	talk	unit	phone	loch	lips	tone

- Lower-case sigma is written σ except for ς at the end of a word.
- <u>Gamma Nasal:</u> Pronounce gamma like English "n" before gamma, kappa, xsi, or chi. (γγ γκ γξ γχ).

Some Letters Are Confusing

- **Alpha (like a in father) and omicron (like o in not) sound very similar.**
- **Upper-case rho (P) looks like an English P, but sounds like an English R.**
  - **Don't confuse it with the Greek letter pi, which sounds like English P.**
- **Lower-case upsilon (υ) and nu (ν) look similar.**
  - **Nu (ν) has a sharp bottom, whereas upsilon (υ) has a round bottom.**
- **Lower-case kappa (κ) and chi (χ) look similar.**
  - **Kappa (κ) has a vertical line, whereas chi (χ) has diagonal lines.**
  - **Some typefaces use diagonal lines for kappa, making kappa and chi very difficult to distinguish. The Barclay-Newman, BDAG, and BADG lexicons use such a typeface.**

Early Manuscripts Were All Upper Case

- **Early manuscripts were all upper case (Uncials)**
  - **No spaces between words (usually)**
  - **No punctuation**
  - **No breathing marks**
  - **No accents**
  - **No chapter divisions**
  - **No verse divisions**

- **Capital letters now used for**
  - **proper names**
  - **beginning of quotation**
  - **beginning of paragraph**

P52 Demonstrates the Early Writing Style

- **One side of P⁵² (discovered 1920) ➔**
  - **Papyrus page from a codex c. A.D. 125**
  - **Perhaps the oldest extant NT fragment**
  - **John 18:31-33**
  - **21 cm x 20 cm**
  - **Has some space between words**
  - **From the John Rylands Library (*rylibweb.man.ac.uk*)**

- εἶπεν οὖν αὐτοῖς ὁ Πιλᾶτος· λάβετε αὐτὸν ὑμεῖς καὶ κατὰ τὸν νόμον ὑμῶν κρίνατε αὐτόν. εἶπον αὐτῷ <u>οἱ Ἰουδαῖ</u>οι· <u>ἡμῖν</u> οὐκ ἔξεστιν ἀποκτεῖναι <u>οὐδένα· ἵνα ὁ λό</u>γος τοῦ Ἰησοῦ πληρωθῇ ὃν εἶ<u>πεν σημαίν</u>ων ποίῳ θανάτῳ ἤμελλεν ἀπο<u>θνήσκειν</u>. Εἰσῆλθεν οὖν πάλιν εἰς τὸ πραιτώ<u>ριον ὁ Πι</u>λᾶτος καὶ ἐφώνησεν τὸν Ἰησοῦν <u>καὶ εἶπ</u>εν αὐτῷ· σὺ εἶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τῶν Ἰουδαίων;
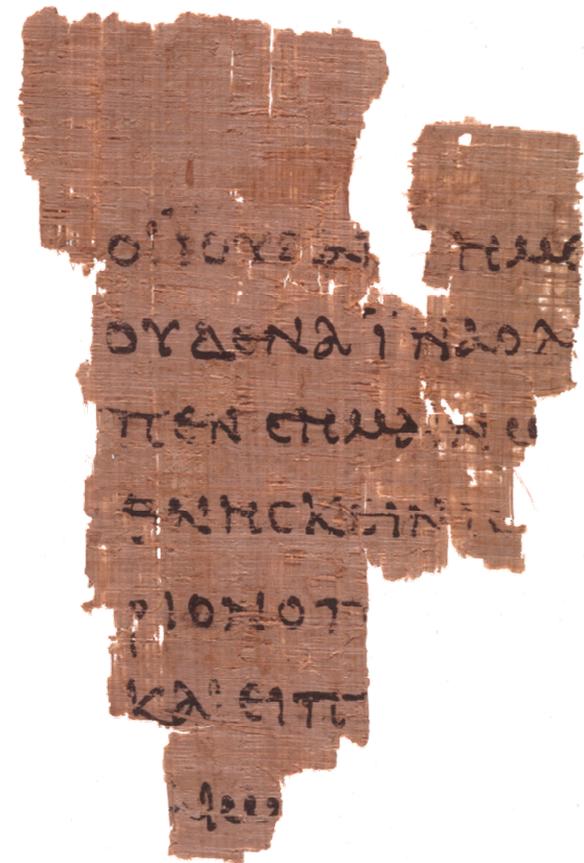
Short and Long Vowels

- **Always short: epsilon and omicron**
- **Always long: eta and omega**
- **Either short or long: alpha, iota, and upsilon**
  - **In this class, we will pronounce the same whether short or long.**
  - **Mounce says pronounce differently if short than if long.**
  - **We're not learning accent rules, so we don't know if short or long.**
  - **D.A. Carson, *Greek Accents*, 13-14 argues for same pronunciation.**

Short	Long
alpha (α) 'f<u>a</u>ther'	alpha (α) 'f<u>a</u>ther'
epsilon (ϵ) 'm<u>e</u>t'	eta (η) 'ob<u>ey</u>'
iota (ι) 'h<u>i</u>t'	iota (ι) 'h<u>i</u>t'
upsilon (υ) '<u>u</u>nit'	upsilon (υ) '<u>u</u>nit'
omicron (o) 'n<u>o</u>t'	omega (ω) 't<u>o</u>ne'

A Diphthong Forms One Sound
With Two Vowels in a Row

- **A diphthong is two vowels in a row that form one sound**
- **A diaeresis (two dots ¨) prevents a diphthong (e.g. Ἠσαΐας).**
  - **Placed over the second vowel.**

Diphthong	Pronunciation	Example
αι	**aisle**	αἴρω
ει	**eight**	εἰ
οι	**oil**	οἰκία
αυ	**sauerkraut**	αὐτός
ου	**soup**	οὐδέ
υι	**suite**	υἱός
ευ	**feud**	εὐθύς
ηυ	**feud**	ηὔξανεν

- **Formed with long alpha, eta, or omega and an iota subscript (ᾳ ῃ ῳ)**
- **Iota subscript = a small iota written under the vowel.**
- **Pronounced like a plain vowel without the iota.**
- **Transliterated as if iota were not subscripted.**

Improper diphthong	Sound	Transliteration
ᾳ	f<u>a</u>ther	ai
ῃ	ob<u>e</u>y	ēi
ῳ	t<u>o</u>ne	ōi

Greek Has Two Breathing Marks

- **Not in the early manuscripts!**
- **Words that begin with a rho or a vowel always have a breathing mark.**
- **Rough Breathing (῾) adds an 'h' sound.**
- **Smooth Breathing (᾿) is silent (no change to sound of word).**
- **Initial rho and upsilon always have a rough breathing.**
- **Over lower-case, in front of upper case.**
- **With second letter of initial diphthong, otherwise with first letter of word.**

	Doesn't begin with a diphthong	Begins with a diphthong
Begins with capital letter	Ἀγάπη	Εἰ
Begins with lower-case	ἀγάπη	εἰ

4 Greek Punctuation Marks

- **Not in the early manuscripts!**

Punctuation Mark	Meaning in Greek
, (English comma)	comma
. (English period)	period
' (Raised dot)	semicolon
; (English semicolon)	question mark

The Last Three Greek Syllables Have Names
Because Accents Can Go Over Them

$$\mathring{\alpha}\gamma\acute{\alpha}\pi\eta = \mathring{\alpha} \quad \gamma\acute{\alpha} \quad \pi\eta$$

nameless   antepenult   penult   ultima

$$\Gamma\alpha\lambda\iota\lambda\alpha\iota\alpha = \Gamma\alpha \quad \lambda\iota \quad \lambda\alpha\iota \quad \alpha$$
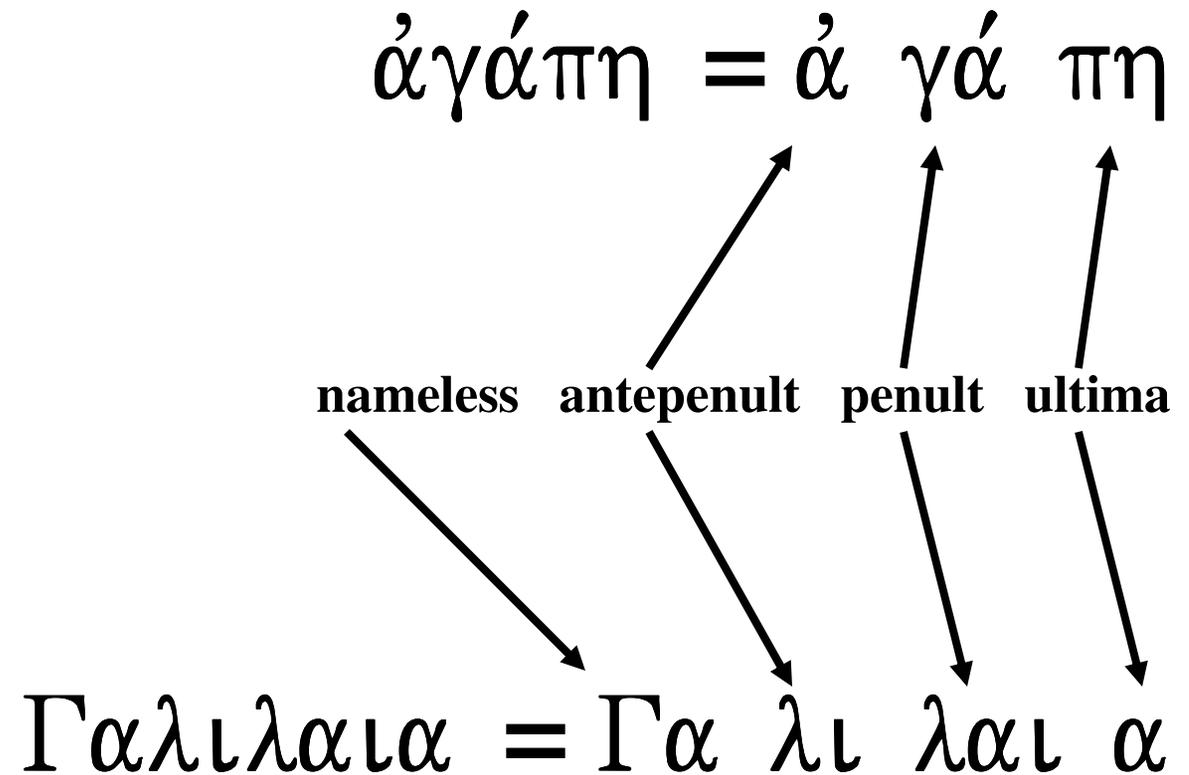
Greek Syllabification Rules
In Order of Precedence

- **Compound words are divided at the joint.** (ἐκβάλλω = ἐκ βάλλω)
    - **You need to know more vocabulary to recognize compound words.**
- **Exactly one vowel or diphthong per syllable**
    - **Therefore 2 vowels in a row that don't form a diphthong are divided into separate syllables. (ἐ παγ γε λί α)**
- **In general, consonants go with the vowel that <u>follows</u> them,**
    - **Therefore syllables end with a vowel or a diphthong.**
    - **Exception #1: If the word ends with a consonant, the final consonant goes with the preceding vowel.**
    - **Exception #2: Repeated consonants are divided. (ἐ παγ γε λί α)**
    - **Exception #3: Consonants that can't be pronounced together are divided.**
        - **Consonants can be pronounced together if:**
            - **A Greek word begins with them (e.g., The στ in Χριστός can be pronounced together because the word στόμα exists, so it is Χρι στός),**
        - **or the second consonant is Mu or Nu (ἔ θνε σιν)**

Six Steps to Divide
A Greek Word into Syllables

1) Divide at the joint if a compound word. (ἐκβάλλουσιν ➜ ἐκ βάλλουσιν)

2) Divide immediately after each diphthong.
   (Each new syllable ends with a diphthong) ἐκ βάλλου σιν

3) Divide immediately after each vowel that isn't part of a diphthong.
   (Each new syllable ends with a vowel) ἐκ βά λλου σι ν

4) If the final syllable does not have a vowel,
   then remove the division immediately preceding the final syllable.
   (Final syllable may end with consonants) ἐκ βά λλου σιν

5) If any syllable begins with two identical consonants in a row
   (e.g. lambda lambda), then move the first consonant of that syllable
   to the end of the syllable that preceded it. ἐκ βάλ λου σιν
   (End syllable with a consonant to break up a double consonant).

6) If any syllable begins with a consonant cluster (meaning two or more
   consonants in a row), then move the first consonant of that syllable to
   the end of the syllable that preceded it, UNLESS the cluster
   (a) has mu or nu as the second letter, or (b) can begin a Greek word.

Practice Syllabifying Greek Words

Ἀβραάμ	ἐγώ	σάββατον
καί	ἔσχατος	Σίμων
ἀπόστολος	ζωή	φωνή
Χριστός	ἄνθρωπος	πνεῦμα
Δαυίδ	ἄγγελος	ἀμήν
Γαλιλαία	Παῦλος	λόγος
δόξα	Πέτρος	κόσμος
θεός	Πιλᾶτος	γραφή
καρδία	προφήτης	

Three Types of Greek Accents

- **Accents were not in the early manuscripts, but were added later to help people who were not native speakers.**
    - **So accents are not inspired.**
    - **Sometimes a word could be accented two ways with different meanings. Usually the right way is obvious from context.**
- **Three accents because three pitches:**

    ´
    acute accent   (Rising pitch)

    `
    grave accent (Falling pitch) {Rhymes with either *save* or *mauve*}

    ˆ
    circumflex accent (Pitch rises then falls.)
- **Accents were pitch in classical Greek, then became stress accents.**
- **We will pronounce all accents with stress, not pitch.**
    - **So pronounce acute, grave, and circumflext accents the same.**
- **Usually one accent per word. Sometimes zero or two.**
- **Breathing mark under a circumflex accent.**
- **Breathing mark in front of an acute or grave accent.**

Basic Placement Rules For Greek Accents

- **Accents only go on the last three syllables.**

- **Circumflex accent can only go over a long vowel.**

- **Nouns try to keep accent on the same syllable when they inflect (λόγος λόγου), so if you are going to do accents, you need to memorize the accent on the lexical form.**

- **Verbs usually keep the accent as close to the front of the word as possible when they inflect. (λύω λύουσιν but λυθησόμεθα)**

- **Grave vs. Acute on Ultima:**
  Grave if no punctuation mark immediately after word.

- **Accents are sometimes critical for distinguishing words or forms.**

	antepenult	long penult	short penult	ultima
ultima has a long vowel	**can't have an accent**	´	´	´ ` ˆ
ultima has a short vowel	´	ˆ	´	´ `

- **Diacritical marks are not in the early manuscripts.**

- **Diaeresis is a set of two dots over a vowel (˙˙).**
  - **When two vowels in a row normally form a diphthong, but are pronounced separately in this particular instance, a diaeresis is placed over the second vowel. (E.g. Μωϋσῆς)**

- **Some words that end in a vowel sometimes substitute a (') for their final vowel when followed by a word that begins with a vowel.**
  - **When the words remain separate, the (') mark is called an apostrophe, and the process is called elision. (ἀπὸ ἐμου" → ἀπ᾽ ἐμου)**
    - **This is like in English how we have "an apple" but "a book."**
  - **When the words contract into one word, the (') mark is called a coronis and the process is called crasis. (καὶ ἐγω → κἀγω)**
    - **This is like contraction in English, where "do not" → "don't."**

Road Map For the Year:
Ten Chapters of Noun-Stuff Next

- **0-4: Introductory matters**

- **5-14: Nouns, etc.**

- **15-35: Verbs**

- **5**   **Introduction to Nouns**
- **6-7**   **Noun cases and the article**
- **8**   **Prepositions**
- **9**   **Adjectives**
- **10**   **Third Declension**
- **11-14 Pronouns**

- **Indefinite Article: "a" or "an"**
    - "An apple" is any apple, not a particular apple.
- **Definite Article: "the"**
    - "The apple" points to a particular apple.
- **Predicate nominative**
    - "A noun, pronoun, or adjective in the nominative case, as in Latin or Greek, that is used in the predicate with a copulative verb and has the same referent as the subject." (Webster)
    - Predicate: the verb and the words governed by or modifying it.
    - Copulative verb: a linking (equating) verb, like "is."
    - Example: "Jesus is Lord."

Subject   Copulative   Predicate
Verb   Nominative
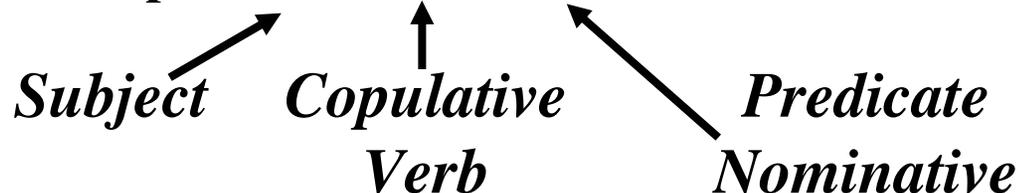
An English Noun Has
Gender, Number, and Case

- **3 Genders: ("Natural gender" so you can guess that rock is "it.")**

  – **<u>Masculine</u>: a prince is a "he."**

  – **<u>Feminine</u>: a princess is a "she."**

  – **<u>Neuter</u>: a rock is an "it."**

- **2 Numbers:**

  – **<u>Singular</u>: "She is a woman."**

  – **<u>Plural</u>: "They are women."**

- **3 Cases:**

  – **<u>Subjective</u>: Does the action. "<u>Husbands</u> should love their wives."**

  – **<u>Possessive</u>: Owns something. "Husbands should love <u>their</u> wives."**

  – **<u>Objective</u>: Receives the action. "Husbands should love their <u>wives</u>."**

A Greek Noun Has
Gender, Number, and Case

- **3 Genders: (Not "natural gender," so you must memorize.)**
  - <u>**Masculine**</u>**: a stone (λίθος) is a "he."**
  - <u>**Feminine**</u>**: a rock (πέτρα) is a "she."**
  - <u>**Neuter**</u>**: a mountain (ὄρος) is an "it."**

- **2 Numbers:**
  - <u>**Singular**</u>**: ἀπόστολος is "apostle."**
  - <u>**Plural**</u>**: ἀπόστολοι is "apostles."**

- **5 Cases...**

- **<u>Nominative</u>:** (Ch 6)
  - Usually Subject or Predicate Nominative. "**<u>Jesus</u>** is **<u>Lord</u>**."
- **<u>Genitive</u>:** (Ch 7)
  - Often indicates possession. "Jesus loves **<u>His</u>** children."
- **<u>Dative</u>:** (Ch 7)
  - Often indicates indirect object. "Karen threw **<u>Brad</u>** a ball."
- **<u>Accusative</u>:** (Ch 6)
  - Often is direct object. "Karen threw Brad a **<u>ball</u>**."
- **<u>Vocative</u>:** (Ch 13)
  - Always direct address. "I love you, **<u>Lord</u>**."
- **Mnemonic: "It is <u>Not</u> <u>Good</u> to <u>Die</u> <u>Apart</u> from Christ, <u>Vern</u>."**
- **Greek nouns change form with number and case:**
  - λόγος (SN), λόγου (SG), λόγῳ (SD), λόγον (SA), λόγε (SV)
  - A noun may have nine distinct forms (5 cases x 2 numbers = 10, but vocative is always the same form as nominative in the plural).

Greek Nouns
Have Gender, Number, and Case

- **Each Greek noun has gender, number and case.**
- **The gender is fixed for each noun.**
  - **Each noun has one gender that does not change.**
  - **A few nouns have multiple genders.**
    - **"Wealth" (πλοῦτος) can be either masculine or neuter.**
- **Inflection**
  - **Greek nouns change their form
    when they change number ("rock" vs. "rocks") or case ("I" vs. "me").**
- **Lexical form**
  - **Lexicon: A Greek dictionary.**
  - **Lexical form is the form of a word that is found in a lexicon.**
    - **"Rock" vs. "rocks." Which has a dictionary entry?**
    - **The lexical form of a noun is the nominative singular (λόγος).**

- **English uses word order rather than inflection.**
  - **"The dog chased the cat." vs. "The cat chased the dog."**
- **Greek uses inflection rather than word order.**
  - **The case (seen in the inflection) determines the function.**
  - **Therefore, all of the following word orders mean "God loves the world."**
    - Θεὸς ἀγαπᾷ τὸν κόσμον
    - Τὸν κόσμον Θεὸς ἀγαπᾷ
    - Ἀγαπᾷ τὸν κόσμον Θεὸς
    - Ἀγαπᾷ Θεὸς τὸν κόσμον
  - **Note that all of these have** τὸν **("the") in front of** κόσμον **("world"), so not all word orders are grammatically correct, even in Greek.**

Greek Nouns Inflect
by Adding a Case Ending to the Stem

- **Greek nouns inflect with number and case.**
- **A Greek noun is composed of a stem and a case ending.**
  - **λόγος = λόγο (stem) + ς (case ending)**
  - **The "stem" is also sometimes called the "root."**
- **Chapter 6 teaches the case endings for nominative and accusative.**
- **Chapter 7 teaches genitive and dative.**
- **To translate, you must be able to determine the lexical form of the word and the case ending (which indicates number and case).**

Case Endings Paradigm

- **"–" means that there is no case ending, so the feminine singular nominative form is the bare stem.**
- **"α" means that the alpha replaces the final vowel of the stem instead of adding on after it.**

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	α
plural accusative	υς	ς	α

Applying the Case Endings Paradigm

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	<u>α</u>
plural accusative	υς	ς	<u>α</u>

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	λόγος	ὥρα	ἔργον
singular accusative	λόγον	ὥραν	ἔργον
plural nominative	λόγοι	ὧραι	ἔργα
plural accusative	λόγους	ὥρας	ἔργα

Sub-Patterns Exist for Noun Declensions

- **Memorize this rule:**

  All nouns with stems ending in eta change eta to alpha in the plural.

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	α
plural accusative	υς	ς	α

declension	2	1		2
gender	masculine	feminine		neuter
singular nominative	λόγος	γραφή	ὥρα	ἔργον
singular accusative	λόγον	γραφήν	ὥραν	ἔργον
plural nominative	λόγοι	γραφαί	ὧραι	ἔργα
plural accusative	λόγους	γραφάς	ὥρας	ἔργα

Practice Inflecting 1st and 2nd Declension Nouns

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	<u>α</u>
plural accusative	υς	ς	<u>α</u>

declension	2	1		2
gender	masculine	feminine		neuter
singular nominative	λόγος	γραφή	ὥρα	ἔργον
singular accusative				
plural nominative				
plural accusative				

Declension

- **Declensions are general patterns for how nouns inflect.**
  - **"General pattern" because there are subpatterns within a declension.**
- **Each Greek noun has one declension (it follows one pattern), which never changes.**
- **Greek has three declensions: "first," "second," and "third."**
  - **First declension: Noun stem ends in alpha or eta**
    - **Usually, but not always, feminine.**
  - **Second declension: Noun stem ends in omicron**
    - **Usually, but not always, masculine or neuter.**
  - **Third declension: Noun stem ends in a consonant**
    - **Masculine, feminine, and neuter all equally likely.**
    - **Covered in chapter 10.**

Parsing

- **Given the inflected form found in the GNT (Greek New Testament), determine the:**
    - **lexical form**
    - **gender**
    - **number**
    - **case**
    - **meaning of the inflected form.**
- **λόγοι is from λόγος , masculine, plural nominative, meaning "words."**

- **Different people parse in different orders. If you use a different order, that is ok. But I parse in the order I think: I first guess the lexical form. Then I know the gender, because I've memorized it for every noun. Then I figure out the number and case from the case ending. And the meaning of the inflected form is last because I need to know everything else in order to figure out what it is.**

Mounce's First Three Noun Rules

- **First noun rule**
  - **"Stems ending in alpha or eta are in the first declension,**
  - **stems ending in omicron are in the second,**
  - **and consonantal stems are in the third."**
- **Second noun rule: "Every neuter word has the same form in the nominative and accusative."**
- **Third noun rule: "Almost all neuter words end in alpha in the nominative and accusative plural."**
- **If you memorize the case endings chart, you don't need rules 2 and 3.**

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	α
plural accusative	υς	ς	α

Greek Has A Definite Article

- **There is no indefinite article ("a" or "an") in Greek, so you don't need to use the word "definite" in referring to the Greek article.**

- **The article is usually translated as "the."**

- **Sometimes Greek uses the article with a noun that English doesn't (e.g. names like "the Jesus" and abstract concepts like "the mercy"). In which case, the article can be omitted in your English translation.**

- **Inflection. The article inflects with gender, number, and case.**

- **Agreement. The article always has the same gender, number, and case as the noun that it modifies. "The article agrees with the gender, number, and case of the noun that it modifies."**

- **If a noun has an article, then you have an easy way to parse the noun.**

The Greek Article Inflects To Agree With The Noun in Gender, Number, and Case

- The lexical form of the article is its masculine singular nominative form (ὁ).

- Memorize the article with the lexical form of the noun as the way of memorizing the gender of vocabulary words. (e.g. memorize ὁ λόγος rather than simply memorizing λόγος).

- The inflected form of the article depends only on the gender, number, and case of the noun that it is modifying. It does not depend on the declension of the noun.

gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ὁ	ἡ	τό
singular accusative	τόν	τήν	τό
plural nominative	οἱ	αἱ	τά
plural accusative	τούς	τάς	τά

Practice
Determine Stem and Declension

Noun	Stem	Declension	Noun	Stem	Declension
ἄγγελος			καρδία		
ἄνθρωπος			κόσμος		
ἀγάπη			λόγος		
ἀπόστολος			Παῦλος		
βασιλεία			Πέτρος		
Χριστός			Πιλᾶτος		
δόξα			προφήτης		
ἔργον			θεός		
φωνή			σάββατον		
Γαλιλαία			ὥρα		
γραφή			ζωή		
καιρός					

A Postpositive Word Can't Come First in a Sentence

- **Some words are "postpositive."**

- **Postpositive words cannot be the first word in a sentence.**

- **δέ is postpositive.**

- **Matthew 2:1 ("And after the Jesus was born…")**
  - **"Τοῦ δὲ Ἰησοῦ γεννηθέντος…" in Greek.**
  - **"Δέ" is the second word in the Greek sentence, and comes between "Jesus" and the article ("Τοῦ") because it is postpositive, and hence cannot be placed first in the sentence, even though it belongs first due both to logic (it is a conjunction) and even though the article (Τοῦ) is tightly tied to the noun (Ἰησοῦ).**
  - **Note that words can come between an article and the noun it modifies.**

Form of οὐ Depends On The Following Word

- **In English, we use "a" or "an" depending on the beginning of the following word.**

- **Some Greek words do similar things.**

- **οὐ (a vocabulary word for chapter 6) changes form as follows:**

Form	When used
οὐ	Lexical form. Used when followed by a consonant other than rho.
οὐκ	Used when followed by a smooth breathing.
οὐχ	Used when followed by a rough breathing.

Greek Genitive Case
Often Indicates Possession

- **English possessive case:**
  - **the apostle's = of the apostle**
  - **the apostles' = of the apostles**
- **Greek Genitive Case**
  - **Often indicates possession (like the English possessive case).**
  - **Key word = "of."**
    - **Try adding "of" before a word in the genitive case.**
  - **The genitive has many other functions (Wallace lists thirty-three!)**
    - **So the key word "of" doesn't always work.**
- **"ὁ λόγος τοῦ θεοῦ"**
  - **literally "the word of the God"**

  $$\boxed{\text{Note the "key word."}}$$

  - **"ὁ λόγος" is in the nominative case**
  - **"τοῦ θεοῦ" is in the genitive case, so God possesses the word.**

- The indirect object is the one who receives the action of the verb or is otherwise indirectly involved.

- e.g. "Mary handed Joseph the baby."
    - "Joseph" is the indirect object because he is the answer of the question "To whom did Mary hand the baby?"
    - "Mary" is the subject because she is one doing the action of the verb.
    - "the baby" is the direct object because He is the one being acted upon by the verb.

	Direct Object	Indirect Object
English	Objective case	Objective case
Greek	Accusative case	Dative case

The Greek Dative Case
Is Often Used for the Indirect Object

- **Greek Dative Case often indicates the indirect object.**
  - **Key word = "to."**
  - **For the dative case, try adding "to" before a word in the dative case as a rough, initial English translation.**
  - **The dative case has many other functions (See Wallace)**
    - **So the key word "to" doesn't always work.**
- **e.g. "Ὁ θεός δίδωσι τόν Χριστόν τῷ κόσμῳ"**
  - **Literally "The God gives the Christ <u>to</u> the world."**
  - **"Ὁ θεός" is in the nominative case (the subject)**
  - **"δίδωσι" means "he/she/it gives"**
  - **"τόν Χριστόν" is in the accusative case (the direct object)**
  - **"τῷ κόσμῳ" is in the dative case (the indirect object).**

The Complete Case Ending Paradigm
For First and Second Declensions

- Added the genitive and dative rows to the chart in chapter 6.

- Iota is always present in the dative.

- Genitive plural always ends in "ων" (all declensions, all genders).

- Noun rule 6: In the genitive and dative, the masculine and neuter will always be identical.

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ
singular dative	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι subscript
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	α
plural genitive	ων	ων	ων
plural dative	ις	ις	ις
plural accusative	υς	ς	α

The Article Chart Looks Like
The Case Ending Paradigm

gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ὁ	ἡ	τό
singular genitive	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
singular dative	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
singular accusative	τόν	τήν	τό
plural nominative	οἱ	αἱ	τά
plural genitive	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
plural dative	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
plural accusative	τούς	τάς	τά

gender	2 masculine	1 feminine	2 neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ
singular dative	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι subscript
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	α
plural genitive	ων	ων	ων
plural dative	ις	ις	ις
plural accusative	υς	ς	α

Comments About the Article Chart

- Memorize the accents in the article chart because there are other words that differ only by an accent.
- Memorize the forms of the article as vocabulary words.
  - e.g. τοῦ is masculine or neuter singular genitive.
  - e.g. τό is neuter singular nominative or accusative.
- Note that eta at the end of the feminine singular switches to alpha in the plural.
- The acute accent will switch to grave in the text, because the article will be followed by another word, rather than by a punctuation mark.

gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ὁ	ἡ	τό
singular genitive	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ
singular dative	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ
singular accusative	τόν	τήν	τό
plural nominative	οἱ	αἱ	τά
plural genitive	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
plural dative	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
plural accusative	τούς	τάς	τά

Applying the Case Endings Paradigm

declension	2	1		2
gender	masculine	feminine		neuter
singular nominative	λόγος	γραφή	ὥρα	ἔργον
singular genitive	λόγου	γραφῆς	ὥρας	ἔργου
singular dative	λόγῳ	γραφῇ	ὥρᾳ	ἔργῳ
singular accusative	λόγον	γραφήν	ὥραν	ἔργον
plural nominative	λόγοι	γραφαί	ὧραι	ἔργα
plural genitive	λόγων	γραφῶν	ὡρῶν	ἔργων
plural dative	λόγοις	γραφαῖς	ὥραις	ἔργοις
plural accusative	λόγους	γραφάς	ὥρας	ἔργα

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ς	–	ν
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ
singular dative	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι subscript
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν
plural nominative	ι	ι	α
plural genitive	ων	ων	ων
plural dative	ις	ις	ις
plural accusative	υς	ς	α

Noun Rules 4 and 5

- **Noun rule 4: In the singular dative, the iota subscripts if possible**
  - **(Needs long vowel, so 1st and 2nd declensions, but not 3rd).**
- **Noun rule 5: Vowels often change their length ("ablaut").**
  - **e.g. In the singular dative, the final stem vowel lengthens**
    - **alpha ➔ long alpha** (*invisible except effect on accent*)
    - **eta ➔ eta or ει**
    - **omicron ➔ omega or ου**

declension	2	1		2
gender	masculine	feminine		neuter
sing. nominative	λόγος	γραφή	ὥρα	ἔργον
singular genitive	λόγου	γραφῆς	ὥρας	ἔργου
singular dative	λόγῳ	γραφῇ	ὥρᾳ	ἔργῳ
sing. accusative	λόγον	γραφήν	ὥραν	ἔργον
pl. nominative	λόγοι	γραφαί	ὧραι	ἔργα
plural genitive	λόγων	γραφῶν	ὡρῶν	ἔργων
plural dative	λόγοις	γραφαῖς	ὥραις	ἔργοις
pl. accusative	λόγους	γραφάς	ὥρας	ἔργα

Feminine Singular Genitive
Can Be Identical to Plural Accusative

- **1st declension feminine, sigma is the case ending for both singular genitive and plural accusative!**

- **A noun that ends in ας is plural accusative unless:**

  - **The lexical form ends in alpha**

  - **AND the letter before the alpha is epsilon, iota, or rho.**

- **Memorize this rule: alpha switches to eta in the singular genitive and dative unless immediately preceded by epsilon, iota, or rho. (δόξα vs ὥρα)**

declension	1		
gender	feminine		
sing. nominative	γραφή	ὥρα	δόξα
singular genitive	γραφῆς	ὥρας	δόξης
singular dative	γραφῇ	ὥρᾳ	δόξῃ
sing. accusative	γραφήν	ὥραν	δόξαν
plural nominative	γραφαί	ὧραι	δόξαι
plural genitive	γραφῶν	ὡρῶν	δοξῶν
plural dative	γραφαῖς	ὥραις	δόξαις
plural accusative	γραφάς	ὥρας	δόξας

Misc. Grammar:
Double Negatives. Apposition.

- **Double negative.**
  - In Greek, two negatives strengthen each other rather than canceling each other out as they do in English.

- **Apposition.**
  - Two adjacent nouns in the same number and case, referring to the same person or thing, and with the same syntactical relationship to the rest of the clause (Wallace p. 48)
  - If the second noun is genitive rather than agreeing in case, then it is a **genitive of apposition.**

Practice Inflecting 1st and 2nd Declension Nouns

declension				
gender				
sing. nominative	λόγος	γραφή	ὥρα	ἔργον
singular genitive				
singular dative				
sing. accusative				
pl. nominative				
plural genitive				
plural dative				
pl. accusative				

- **"A preposition is a word that indicates the relationship between two words." (Mounce 56)**

- **"Preposition. a member of a class of words that are typically used before nouns, pronouns, or other substantives to form phrases with adverbial, nominal, or adjectival function, and that typically express a spatial, temporal, or other relationship, as *on, by, to, with,* or *since*." (Webster)**

- **We memorized this list of prepositions in my 3$^{rd?}$ grade English class: about, above, across, after, against, along, among, around, at, before, below, beneath, beside, …**

Prepositional Phrase = Preposition + Object of the Preposition.

- **Object of the preposition:**
  - the word that follows the preposition (but there may be intervening words) and is controlled by the preposition.
- **In English, the object of the preposition is in the objective case.**
  - "They pinned the medal on her,"
  - Not "They pinned the medal on she."
- **Prepositional phrase:**
  - the preposition, its object, and any modifiers of the object.
- e.g. "Joe sat on the chair."
  - 'On' is a preposition describing the spatial relationship between Joe and the chair.
  - 'Chair' is the object of the preposition.
  - 'On the chair' is the prepositional phrase.

The Preposition Dictates the Case of The Object of the Preposition

- **In Greek, the preposition sets the case of its object.**
  - **Don't use the key word for the case (e.g. "of" with genitive) of the object of the preposition. So "διά Χριστοῦ" (Χριστοῦ is genitive) means "through Christ," not "through of Christ."**
- **The object of the preposition is never (almost) in the nominative case.**
  - **Revelation 1:4 violates the normal rules of Greek grammar in order to allude to the LXX translation of Exodus 3:14.**
- **Some prepositions always take an object in the genitive.**
- **Some prepositions always take an object in the dative.**
  - **e.g. The object of the preposition ἐν is always dative.**
- **Some prepositions always take an object in the accusative.**
  - **e.g. The object of the preposition εἰς is always accusative.**
- **The object of the preposition is NEVER in the vocative case.**

Some Prepositions Take An Object
In One of Several Cases

- **Some prepositions take an object in one of several cases.**
- **The meaning of the preposition dictates the case of the object.**
  - **E.g., The preposition διά can mean either 'through' or 'because of'.**
  - **If διά means 'through', then the object is in the genitive.**
  - **If διά means 'because of', then the object is in the accusative.**
- **You must memorize the case of the object along with the definition of the preposition.**
- **Memorize:**
  - **"ἐν dative in"**
  - **"εἰς accusative into"**
  - **"διά genitive through, διά accusative because of."**

- **Prepositions NEVER inflect with case.**

- **Elision:**

  - **if the preposition ends in a vowel and the following word begins with a vowel, then the final vowel of the preposition may be (but isn't always) replaced by an apostrophe.**

    - ἀπὸ ἐμοῦ → ἀπ' ἐμοῦ

  - **If the word following the preposition begins with a rough breathing, then the final consonant of the preposition may also change to make it easier to pronounce.**

    - μετὰ ἡμῶν → μετ' ἡμῶν → μεθ' ἡμῶν

The Movable Nu Sometimes Shows Up in Some Verb Forms

- **Movable Nu: a Nu (ν) that is added to the end of some words sometimes, depending on what word comes immediately after, just like "a" changes to "an" depending on the following word.**

- **The dominant use is to prevent two vowels in a row, but there are many exceptions.**

- **The bottom line is that for certain verb forms you need to be able to recognize it either with or without a Nu (ν) at the end of the word.**

- **In paradigms, a movable Nu is written in parentheses (ν).**

  - **E.g. ἐστί(ν)**

- **In the Bible, there will be no parentheses around the Nu, so you will see, for example, either ἐστί or ἐστίν, and need to recognize them both as εἰμί in the present indicative 3rd person singular form, meaning "He/she/it is."**

Verb Paradigm for ἐιμί

- **In paradigms, a movable Nu is written in parentheses (ν).**
  - **E.g. ἐστί(ν)**
- **In the Bible, there will be no parentheses around the Nu.**
  - **You will see, for example, either ἐστί or ἐστίν, and need to recognize them both as ἐιμί in the present indicative 3rd person singular form, meaning "He/she/it is."**

	Present Tense Inflected Form	Translation
1st person singular	ἐιμί	I am
2nd person singular	εἶ	You are
3rd person singular	ἐστί(ν)	He/she/it is
1st person plural	ἐσμέν	We are
2nd person plural	ἐστέ	Y'all are
3rd person plural	ἐισι(ν)	They are

An Independent Clause Can Stand Alone.
A Dependent Clause Can't.

- **Clause**: A collection of words with a subject and a verb.

- **Phrase**: A collection of words without a verb.

- **Independent clause**: A clause that can stand alone (it can form a complete sentence).
  - Always has the main verb of a sentence.

- **Dependent clause**: A clause that cannot stand alone.
  - Never has the main verb of a sentence. Instead, it is dependent upon the main verb.

- E.g. "When I go to the library, I will return the book."
  - "When I go to the library" is a dependent clause.
  - "I will return the book" is the independent clause.

- Some words often introduce dependent clauses.
  - E.g. "In order that" in English.
  - E.g. ἵνα and ὅτι in Greek.

- **When translating, divide sentences into groups:**
  - **subject, predicate, prepositional phrases.**
  - **Keep a prepositional phrase as a separate group where possible (although it may be a subject of the predicate).**
  - **E.g. "She / studied / at the desk."**
- **Determine what the prepositional phrase modifies.**
  - **E.g. "At the desk" modifies the verb "studied" in the previous example.**
- **Greek often drops the article from prepositional phrases.**
  - **You may need to add the article when translating.**
  - **E.g., ὁ λόγος ἔρχεται εἰς κόσμον means "The word goes into [the] world."**

Another Noun Inflection Rule

- **Alpha changes to eta**
  - **in the genitive and dative singular**
  - **when the following are all true about the word:**
    - **It is a noun with stem ending in alpha (therefore first declension)**
    - **The penultimate letter of the stem is NOT epsilon, iota, or rho. (there are 5 exceptions with rho!).**

declension	1		
gender	feminine		
sing. nominative	γραφή	ὥρα	δόξα
singular genitive	γραφῆς	ὥρας	δόξης
singular dative	γραφῇ	ὥρᾳ	δόξῃ
sing. accusative	γραφήν	ὥραν	δόξαν
plural nominative	γραφαί	ὧραι	δόξαι
plural genitive	γραφῶν	ὡρῶν	δοξῶν
plural dative	γραφαῖς	ὥραις	δόξαις
plural accusative	γραφάς	ὥρας	δόξας

- **On adjectives, I follow Wallace rather than Mounce.**
- **Uses of Adjective:**
  - **Adjectival**
    - **Modifies or asserts something about a noun.**
    - **Attributive: "The *black* book is a bible." (Modifies noun).**
    - **Predicate: "That bible is *black*." (Asserts about the noun).**
  - **Substantival**
    - **Acts as a noun.**
    - **"The *good*, the *bad*, and the *ugly* all need Christ."**
  - **Adverbial**
    - **Acts as an adverb (rare).**
    - **Adverbial adjectives are often neuter accusative.**
    - **"I'm doing *good*." (Bad English, but can be proper Greek).**

Adjectival Use of Adjectives

- **Describes a noun or other substantive.**

- **Gender, number, and case agree with the noun that it describes.**

- **There are two adjectival relations of adjectives to nouns:**

  - **Attributive**

    - **Modifies a noun.**

    - **"The *black* book is a bible."**

    - **ζωὴν αἰώνιον. (John 3:16) "life eternal"**

  - **Predicate**

    - **Predicates something about a noun.**

    - **"That bible is black."**

    - **The copulative verb may be included or omitted.**

      - **πονηρὰ τὰ ἔργα. (John 3:19) "evil [are] the deeds."**

      - **ὁ θεὸς ἀληθής ἐστιν. (John 3:33) "The God is true."**

Substantival Use of Adjectives

- "The *good*, the *bad*, and the *ugly* all need Christ."
- ῥῦσαι ἡμᾶς ἀπὸ τοῦ πονηροῦ. (Matt 6:13) Deliver us from <u>the evil</u>.
- Acts as a noun.
- Does not modify a noun.
- Gender
  - Natural gender rather than the gender of the elided noun.
    - References to a male are masculine.
    - References to a female are feminine.
    - References to a concept or entity are often neuter.
      - Many exceptions (e.g. κοινή is feminine because it modifies the elided feminine noun διαλέκτος).
- Number is set by what it stands for.
- Case is set by its function in the sentence.

What Sets Gender, Number, and Case
of Adjectives and Pronouns

	Gender	Number	Case
Attributive Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Predicate Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Adverbial Adjective	Usually neuter	??	Usually accusative
Substantival Adjective	Natural gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause

Determining How an Adjective is Used

- **Modifies a verb ➔ Adverbial.**

- **Does not describe a noun (and not adverbial) ➔ Substantival.**

- **Describes a noun ➔ Adjectival.**

  – **Article in front of adjective ➔ "Attributive position"**

  – **Article in front of noun but not adjective ➔ "Predicate position"**

  – **Neither noun nor adjective has article**
     ➔ Could be either attributive or predicate

	Adjective has article	Adjective lacks article
No noun	Substantive	Substantive
Noun has article	Attributive	Predicate
Noun lacks article	Attributive	Attributive or Predicate

Distinguishing Attributive and Predicate Adjectives

Greek	English	Structure ("Position")
ὁ ἀγαθὸς θεός	"The good God"	1st Attributive
ὁ θεὸς ὁ ἀγαθός	"The good God" (Lit. "The God, the good [one]")	2nd Attributive
θεὸς ὁ ἀγαθός	"The good God" (Lit. "God, the good [one]")	3rd Attributive
ἀγαθὸς ὁ θεός	"The God [is] good." (Lit. "Good [is] the God.")	1st Predicate
ὁ θεὸς ἀγαθός	The God [is] good.	2nd Predicate
ἀγαθὸς θεός	"Good God" or "God [is] good."	Attributive or Predicate
θεὸς ἀγαθός	"Good God" or "God [is] good."	Attributive or Predicate

Practice
Distinguishing Attributive and Predicate Adjectives

- **Does not describe a noun (and not adverbial) ➜ Substantival.**
- **Describes a noun ➜ Adjectival.**
  - **Article in front of adjective ➜ Attributive.**
  - **Article in front of noun but not adjective ➜ Predicate.**
  - **Neither noun nor adjective has article ➜ Attributive or Predicate**

Greek	English	Structure ("Position")
ὁ ἀγαθὸς θεός		
ὁ θεὸς ὁ ἀγαθός		
θεὸς ὁ ἀγαθός		
ἀγαθὸς ὁ θεός		
ὁ θεὸς ἀγαθός		
ἀγαθὸς θεός		
θεὸς ἀγαθός		

Greek Adjectives Inflect
with Gender, Number, and Case

- **Substantival adjectives**
  - Gender and number are determined by what it stands for.
  - Case is determined by its function in the sentence.
- **Adjectival adjectives (predicate or attributive)**
  - Gender, number, and case agree with the noun it modifies.
  - To know which noun the adjective modifies, you must memorize the gender of all the nouns!
  - ὁ ἀγαθὸς λόγος ἐστίν… (The good word is…).
  - οἱ ἀγαθοὶ λόγοι ἐσμέν… (The good words are…).
  - αἱ ἀγαθαὶ ἐξουσίαι ἐσμέν… (The good authorities are…).
- **We need to learn how adjectives inflect!**
  - The lexical form is the masculine, singular, nominative form.
  - Adjectives use the same case endings as nouns.

Adjectives Use the Same Case Endings as Nouns

declension	2	1	2
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter
singular nominative	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
singular genitive	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
singular dative	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
singular accusative	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
plural nominative	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
plural genitive	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
plural dative	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
plural accusative	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά

- **Always memorize the singular nominative of all three genders of an adjective so that you will know how it inflects.**
  - **Memorize "ἀγαθός, ἀγαθή, ἀγαθόν, good."**
  - **You may need to memorize the genitive if it isn't obvious.**

- ἀγαθός **is a 2-1-2 adjective.**
  - **Masculine is 2nd declension.**
  - **Feminine is 1st declension.**
  - **Neuter is 2nd declension.**
  - **Memorize "ἀγαθός, ἀγαθή, ἀγαθόν, good."**
- αἰώνιος **is a 2-2 adjective.**
  - **Masculine and feminine are 2nd declension and identical.**
  - **Neuter is 2nd declension.**
  - **Memorize "αἰώνιος, αἰώνιος, αἰώνιον, eternal."**
- **There are also '3-1-3', and '3-3' adjectives.**
  - **For a 3-1-3, what declension are the masculine, feminine, and neuter?**
  - **How about for a 3-3?**
  - **What must you determine from the context rather than from the form for 2-2 and 3-3 adjectives?**

1st Declension Feminine Stems

- The case ending for 1st declension feminine nouns and adjectives is sigma for singular genitive and plural accusative.
- This is unambiguous if the stem ends in eta, because
  - singular genitive = ης.
  - plural accusative = ας.
- This is ambiguous if the stem ends in alpha, because
  - singular genitive = ας.
  - plural accusative = ας.
- Most alpha-stem nouns avoid this ambiguity by changing alpha to eta in the singular genitive and dative.
  - Alpha-stem nouns with the penultimate letter epsilon, iota, or rho don't do this, so they are ambiguous in SG and PA.
- Most adjectives avoid this ambiguity by using eta as the stem vowel in the singular.
  - Adjectives with rho or a vowel as the penultimate letter of the stem use alpha for the singular stem vowel, so are ambiguous in SG & PA.

- ἀλλήλων ("one another")

  – Never occurs in the nominative or in the singular.

  – The lexical form is the masculine plural genitive form ἀλλήλων.

- ἀπεκρίθη ("he/she/it answered")

  – Is a verb that takes its direct object in the dative case.

  – Don't use the key word "to" with the dative direct object.

  – ἀπεκρίθη αὐτῷ means "He/she/it answered him,"
    not "He/she/it answered to him."

  – For verbs that use a direct object in a case other than the accusative,
    you should memorize the direct object case with the vocabulary word.

- Translation: When dividing a sentence into parts, keep adjectival
  adjectives with the noun they modify.

  – ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος / γράφει / τὸ βιβλίον

  – The good man / writes / the book.

Consonantal Iota and Digamma

- These two letters used to be in the Greek alphabet, but dropped out before the Classical period.
- They never show up in our texts, but some words have consonantal iota or digamma in their stems or elsewhere, and it changes how they inflect.
- Some words that look irregular are actually regular, but they follow the patterns appropriate for consonantal iota or digamma.
- They are considered "semi-vowels."

- Consonantal iota (ι̯)
  - Mounce writes it with an iota with a carrot under it. (ι̯)
  - I've been unable to discover its original location or name.
  - It was pronounced like the "y" in "yet."

- Digamma (Ϝ)
  - It was between epsilon and zeta.
  - Its original name was "vau," but it is called "digamma" because of its shape ("double gamma" because it looks like two gammas Γ).
  - Digamma was pronounced like the English letter "W"

- **Remember noun rule #1:**
  - **Nouns with stems ending in alpha or eta are first declension,**
  - **stems ending in omicron are second declension,**
  - **stems ending in a consonant are third declension.**
- **This chapter explains the inflection of third declension nouns.**
- **Everything in this chapter applies to everything "noun-like" that is third declension:**
  - **nouns**
  - **pronouns**
  - **adjectives**
  - **participles**

- **Most first declension nouns are feminine.**

- **Most second declension nouns are masculine or neuter.**

- **There is no "most" for the gender of third-declension nouns.**

- **You must memorize the gender for each noun!**

- **There are two helps:**
  - **All words with stems ending in ματ are neuter.**
    - **E.g., the word πνεῦμα (with stem *πνευματ) is neuter.**
  - **All words with stems ending in <u>consonantal iota</u> are feminine.**
    - **E.g., the word πίστις (with stem *πιστι̯) is feminine.**

3rd Declension Case Endings For M & F are Identical

- The M/F singular nominative case ending is sigma,
  - Except nouns stems ending in ν, ρ, ς, and $o\nu\tau$ use no ending (-).
- The M/F singular accusative case ending is alpha,
  - Except noun stems ending in consonantal iota and digamma use nu.
  - 2-syllable <u>stems</u> ending in $\iota\tau$, $\iota\delta$, and $\iota\theta$ often drop the const & use nu.
- The M/F plural accusative case ending is $\alpha\varsigma$,
  - Except consonantal iota stems use $\epsilon\varsigma$ (the same as plural nominative).

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	M	F	N	M&F	N
singular nominative	ς	–	ν	$\varsigma / -$	–
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	$o\varsigma$	$o\varsigma$
singular dative	ι sub	ι sub	ι sub	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	α / ν	–
plural nominative	ι	ι	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\epsilon\varsigma$	α
plural genitive	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$
plural dative	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$
plural accusative	$\upsilon\varsigma$	ς	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\alpha\varsigma / \epsilon\varsigma$	α

3rd Declension Case Endings

- **Iota in singular dative doesn't subscript (b/c stem ends in consonant).**
- **Plural dative has movable nu.**
  - **Recognize words with or without the nu.**
- **Stem is usually the singular genitive without the case ending ($o\varsigma$).**
  - **Memorize the singular genitive with the lexical form so that you can figure out the stem, and thus parse the word.**

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	M	F	N	M&F	N
singular nominative	ς	$-$	ν	$\varsigma / -$	$-$
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	$o\varsigma$	$o\varsigma$
singular dative	ι sub	ι sub	ι sub	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	α / ν	$-$
plural nominative	ι	ι	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\epsilon\varsigma$	α
plural genitive	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$
plural dative	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$
plural accusative	$\upsilon\varsigma$	ς	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\alpha\varsigma / \epsilon\varsigma$	α

Memory Helps For
3rd Declension Case Endings

- M/F singular nominative same case endings as 1st/2nd declension.

- All datives have iota.

- The plural dative case ending for 3rd declension is
  the 1st/2nd ending flipped (i.e. ις → σι), with a movable nu at the end.

- The plural genitive ending is always ων.

- Neuter plural nominative and accusative ends in alpha for all declensions (rule #3).

- In the genitive and in the dative, the masculine and neuter have the same case endings.

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	M	F	N	M&F	N
singular nominative	ς	–	ν	ς / –	–
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	ος	ος
singular dative	ι sub	ι sub	ι sub	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	α / ν	–
plural nominative	ι	ι	α	ες	α
plural genitive	ων	ων	ων	ων	ων
plural dative	ις	ις	ις	σι(ν)	σι(ν)
plural accusative	υς	ς	α	ας / ες	α

Noun Rule #7
The Square of Stops

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate	+ ς
Labial	π	β	φ	ψ
Velar	κ	γ	χ	ξ
Dental	τ	δ	θ	ς

- **This is used in both nouns and verbs, so memorize it well!**
- **You don't have to memorize the labels (labial, unvoiced, etc.)**
- **Pi, beta, or phi followed by sigma becomes psi.**
- **Kappa, gamma, or chi followed by sigma becomes xsi.**
- **Tau, delta, or theta followed by sigma becomes sigma.**
- **Example: stem *σαρκ ("flesh") is feminine.**
  - **Stem ends in kappa, so it is third declension.**
  - **Singular nominative: *σαρκ + ς ➤ σαρκς ➤ σαρξ**
  - **Plural dative: *σαρκ + σι(ν) ➤ σαρκσι(ν) ➤ σαρξί(ν).**

- **Rule 8: a tau cannot stand at the end of a word and will drop off.**
  - **Stem *ὀνοματ ("name") is neuter.**
  - **Stem ends in tau, which is a consonant, so it is 3rd declension.**
  - **Singular nominative: *ὀνοματ + "–" ➔ ὀνοματ ➔ ὀνομα**

- **Rule 9: nu + sigma = sigma.**
  - **Stem *παντ ("all") is an adjective. Inflect the masculine form.**
  - **Singular nominative: *παντ + ς ➔ παντς ➔ πανς ➔ πας**

Square of stops

Noun rule 9

Examples of 3rd Declension Inflection

root ("stem")	σαρκ	χαριτ	ονοματ		
root ("stem") type	kappa	tau or delta	ματ		
declension	3	3	3	3	3
gender	feminine	feminine	neuter	M&F	N
singular nominative	σάρξ	χάρις	ὄνομα	ς / –	–
singular genitive	σαρκός	χάριτος	ὀνόματος	ος	ος
singular dative	σαρκί	χάριτι	ὀνόματι	ι	ι
singular accusative	σάρκα	χάριτα or χάριν	ὄνομα	α / ν	–
plural nominative	σάρκες	χάριτες	ὀνόματα	ες	α
plural genitive	σαρκῶν	χαρίτων	ὀνομάτων	ων	ων
plural dative	σαρξί(ν)	χάρισι(ν)	ὀνόμασι(ν)	σι(ν)	σι(ν)
plural accusative	σάρκας	χάριτας	ὀνόματα	ας / ες	α

Practice Inflecting 3rd Declension Nouns

root ("stem")	σαρκ	χαριτ	ονοματ		
root ("stem") type	kappa	tau or delta	ματ		
declension	3	3	3	3	3
gender	feminine	feminine	neuter	M&F	N
singular nominative	σάρξ	χάρις	ὄνομα	ς / –	–
singular genitive				ος	ος
singular dative				ι	ι
singular accusative				α / ν	–
plural nominative				ες	α
plural genitive				ων	ων
plural dative				σι(ν)	σι(ν)
plural accusative				ας / ες	α

When Adjectives Change Gender, They May Change Declension.

- Adjectives take all three genders.

- The declension of the adjective can vary with the gender.

- There are 4 categories for what declensions adjectives take.

Category	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
2-1-2	2nd declension	1st declension	2nd declension
3-1-3	3rd declension	1st declension	3rd declension
2-2	2nd declension identical to feminine	2nd declension identical to masculine	2nd declension
3-3	3rd declension identical to feminine	3rd declension identical to masculine	3rd declension

Example of Inflecting a 3-1-3 Adjective

- πᾶς is a third-declension adjective.
- As an adjective, it can be masculine, feminine, or neuter.
- M&N use the stem παντ, whereas F uses the stem πασα.

declension	3	1	3	3	3
gender	M	F	N	M&F	N
singular nominative	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν	ς / –	–
singular genitive	παντός	πάσης	παντός	ος	ος
singular dative	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί	ι	ι
singular accusative	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν	α / ν	–
plural nominative	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα	ες	α
plural genitive	πάντων	πασῶν	πάντων	ων	ων
plural dative	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)	σι(ν)	σι(ν)
plural accusative	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα	ας / ες	α

Practice Inflecting the 3-1-3 Adjective πᾶς

- **M&N use the stem** παντ, **whereas F uses the stem** πασα**.**

declension	3	1	3	3	3
gender	**M**	**F**	**N**	**M&F**	**N**
singular nominative				ς / –	–
singular genitive				ος	ος
singular dative				ι	ι
singular accusative				α / ν	–
plural nominative				ες	α
plural genitive				ων	ων
plural dative				σι(ν)	σι(ν)
plural accusative				ας / ες	α

Consonantal Iota Combines with the Personal Ending, Giving an "Unexpected" Result

- Rule: consonantal iota switches to epsilon except in the singular nominative & accusative.
- You need to memorize the "actual" for πιστις.

		"Expected"	*Actual*
root ("stem")		πιστΌ	πιστΌ
root ("stem") type		consonantal iota	consonantal iota
declension	3	3	3
gender	M&F	feminine	feminine
singular nominative	ς / –	πίστΌ	πίστις
singular genitive	ος	πίστΌς	πίστεως
singular dative	ι	πίστΌ	πίστει
singular accusative	α / ν	πίστΌ	πίστιν
plural nominative	ες	πίστΌς	πίστεις
plural genitive	ων	πίστΌν	πίστεων
plural dative	σι(ν)	πίστΌι(ν)	πίστεσι(ν)
plural accusative	ας / ες	πίστΌς	πίστεις

Mounce Miscellany #1

- **The article can sometimes be translated as a personal pronoun rather than as an article.**
  - **ὁ δέ sometimes means "but he" rather than "but the."**
- **Accents are critical for distinguishing some words.**
  - **εἰ means "if," but**
  - **εἶ means "you are" (from the εἰμί paradigm in chapter 8).**
  - **τίς has an acute accent on the first syllable, and means "who?" "what?" "which" or "why?"**
  - **τις has no accent or a grave accent on the ultima (τὶς), and means "someone," "something," "anyone," or "anything."**

Mounce Miscellany #2

- **Some nouns break the inflection rules.**
  - **The stem *ὑδατ ("water") should be written ὑδα in the singular nominative and accusative, but it is written ὕδωρ instead.**
  - **It follows the rules everywhere else. Therefore, be sure to memorize both the singular nominative and singular genitive!**
- **Greek often uses singular verbs with a neuter plural subject**
  - **You would expect a plural verb**
  - **This indicates that the plural subject is being viewed as one entity rather than as plural things. You may need to change to a plural verb in your English translation.**
- **Sometimes the dative is used to specify the means (mechanism) by which something happens**
  - **So you may sometimes need the key word "by" or "with" rather than "to" with the dative sometimes.**

Pronouns Refer to their Antecedents

- **Pronoun:**
  - **a word that replaces a noun.**
  - **e.g. she, her, it, him, they, we, …**
- **Antecedent:**
  - **the word that a pronoun refers back to.**
  - **e.g. "Be careful with the lamp. It is fragile."**
  - **In that example, "it" is a pronoun referring back to the antecedent "lamp."**
- **Personal pronoun:**
  - **a word that replaces a noun referring to a person (not a thing).**
  - **e.g. she, we, he, they, I**

Pronouns Are First, Second, or Third "Person"

- **Person:**
  - **pronouns can be first, second, or third person.**

- **First person:**
  - **Refers to the person or persons speaking**
  - **e.g., I, we, us, me, my**
- **Second person:**
  - **Refers to the person or persons spoken to**
  - **e.g., you, y'all, ye, thy, thou**
- **Third person:**
  - **Refers to anybody else**
  - **e.g., he, she, it, her, he, they, them**

Pronouns Have Person, Number, and Case.

- **Person is set by the antecedent.**
  - **1st is speaker, 2nd is listener, 3rd is anyone else.**
- **Number is set by the antecedent.**
  - **One guy is "he," but two guys are "they."**
- **Case is set by the function in the sentence.**
  - **e.g. "I gave it to her."**
  - **not "Me gave it to her."**
  - **not "I gave it to she."**

All First and Second Person Pronouns <u>Lack</u> Gender.
All Third-Person Pronouns Have Gender

- **First and second person pronouns do not have gender.**
  - **Same as English. "I" and "you" do not have gender.**
- **Third person pronouns have gender.**
  - **Same as English. "He," "she," and "it" have gender.**
- **Gender is set by lexical gender of the antecedent.**
  - **If the antecedent is sin (ἡ ἁμαρτία) then the pronoun is feminine if it is third person.**
  - **If the antecedent is the gospel (τὸ εὐαγγέλιον) , then the pronoun is neuter if the pronoun is third person.**
- **In English, third person pronouns have no gender in the plural, which is why for gender-inclusive writing, people often use plural pronouns ("they") even when a singular pronoun ("he" or "she") would match the number of the antecedent.**
- **In Greek, third person pronouns have gender in the plural.**

What Sets Gender, Number, and Case
of Adjectives and Pronouns

	Gender	Number	Case
Attributive Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Predicate Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Adverbial Adjective	Usually neuter	??	Usually accusative
Substantival Adjective	Natural gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause
Personal Pronoun	Lexical gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause

First-Person Pronoun Paradigm

- The lexical form is ἐγώ.

- It has no gender.

- The emphatic form means the same as the regular form, it just gets more emphasis.

- Parse με as "ἐγώ singular accusative, me."

- Parse ἐμέ as "ἐγώ singular accusative emphatic, me."

gender	Greek	Emphatic Form	English
singular nominative	ἐγώ		I
singular genitive	μου	ἐμοῦ	my
singular dative	μοι	ἐμοί	to me
singular accusative	με	ἐμέ	me
plural nominative	ἡμεῖς		we
plural genitive	ἡμῶν		our
plural dative	ἡμῖν		to us
plural accusative	ἡμᾶς		us

Second Person Pronoun Paradigm

- **The lexical form is σύ.**

- **It has no gender.**

- **The emphatic form means the same as the regular form, it just gets more emphasis.**

- **Parse σε as "σύ singular accusative, you."**

- **Parse σέ as "σύ singular accusative emphatic, you."**

gender	Greek	Emphatic Form	English
singular nominative	σύ		you
singular genitive	σου	σοῦ	your
singular dative	σοι	σοί	to you
singular accusative	σε	σέ	you
plural nominative	ὑμεῖς		you
plural genitive	ὑμῶν		your
plural dative	ὑμῖν		to you
plural accusative	ὑμᾶς		you

Comments on Second Person Pronouns

- Note that the emphatic forms in the second person are distinguished from the regular forms only by an accent. Since the accents were added later, beware placing too much stock in the fact that some second person pronoun is emphatic!

- Beware that English doesn't distinguish between singular and plural second person pronouns, whereas Greek does. If the distinction is important, then you will need to do something (a footnote? y'all? ye?) to convey the meaning in your English translation.

- Remember that ὑμεῖς is 2nd person and ἡμεῖς is 1st person by the sound "hoo" (ὑ) means "you."

Miscellaneous From Mounce Chapter 11

- **Greek questions**
  - **If the question begins with οὐ, the implied answer is "yes."**
  - **If the question begins with μή, the implied answer is "no."**
  - **Remember the distinction with "May implies nay."**
  - **"All are not apostles, are they?"**
    μὴ πάντες ἀπόστολοι; (1 Corinthians 12:29a).
- **Other uses of the dative. Context is the only way to distinguish.**
  - **Dative of means. Key word "with."**
  - **Dative of advantage. Key word "for."**
    - **ὅσα ο κύριός σοι πεποίηκεν**
      "what the Lord has done for you." (Mark 5:19)
  - **Dative of disadvantage.**

αὐτός **is used three ways**

- **Third-Person Personal Pronoun.**
    - **Translated: he, she, it, his, her, they, their, …**
    - **E.g. "He went to the store."**
    - **The most common use.**

- **Intensive Adjective**
    - **Translated: himself, herself, itself, etc.**
    - **E.g., "David himself said..."**

- **Identical Adjective.**
    - **Translated: same**
    - **E.g., "The same Lord…"**

- αὐτός **occurs over 5,000 times in the NT. Learn it well!**

Practice Identifying The Uses of αὐτός

- **What are the three uses of αὐτός?**

- **Identify which word would be written αὐτός in Greek,**
- **Identify the noun it modifies or the antecedent, and**
- **Identify the use of αὐτός.**
  - **This is Sarah. She loves Jesus.**

  - **Mary and Martha prayed at the same time.**

  - **Christine herself wrote the book.**

  - **When we ourselves sing the same song, we exult in God.**

  - **The pastor himself is moved by the same sermon that moves her.**

Translating αὐτός as a Personal Pronoun

# & Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
SN	he		
SG	his		
SD			
SA			
PN			
PG			
PD			
PA			

Translating αὐτός as an Intensive Adjective

# & Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
SN	myself, yourself, himself	myself, yourself, herself	myself, yourself, itself
SG	of myself, of yourself, of himself		
SD			
SA			
PN			
PG			
PD			
PA			

Translating αὐτός as an Identical Adjective

# & Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
SN	same		
SG			
SD			
SA			
PN			
PG			
PD			
PA			

Gender, Number, and Case of αὐτός
Set Like Normal Adjective or Personal Pronoun

αὐτός as
Intensive
Adjective
and as
Identical
Adjective

αὐτός as
Personal
Pronoun

	Gender	Number	Case
Attributive Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Predicate Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Adverbial Adjective	Usually neuter	??	Usually accusative
Substantival Adjective	Natural gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause
Personal Pronoun	Lexical gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause

Practice Identifying The Gender, Number, & Case
of Different Uses of αὐτός

- **What are the three uses of αὐτός?**

- **Identify which word would be written αὐτός in Greek,**
- **Identify the noun it modifies or the antecedent,**
- **Identify the use of αὐτός, and**
- **State the appropriate Greek gender, number, and case.**
  - **She loves Jesus.**

  - **Mary and Martha prayed at the same time.**

  - **Christine herself wrote the book.**

  - **When we ourselves sing the same song, we exult in God.**

  - **The pastor himself is moved by the same sermon that moves her.**

Translating the Gender of αὐτός
When Used as a Personal Pronoun

- **The gender of αὐτός as a personal pronoun is the lexical gender of the antecedent, not the natural gender.**
  - **E.g., The lexical gender of "love" (ἀγαπη) in Greek is feminine.**
  - **So to refer to "love," αὐτός would take a feminine inflected form like αὐτή.**
- **But, the gender of ENGLISH pronouns are natural gender.**
  - **E.g., The natural gender of "love" is neuter.**
  - **So to refer to "love," use a neuter pronoun like "it."**

- **"Galatians 5 mentions love and says that αὐτή is a fruit of the spirit."**
  - **What is a literal translation of αὐτή?**
  - **What is an appropriate English translation of αὐτή in this context?**

Paradigm for αὐτός

- **Lexical form: αὐτός.**
- **It always has a smooth breathing and always begins with alpha.**
  - **This is important because the word οὗτος exists.**
- **Parse with lexical form, gender, number, case, and the meaning of the inflected form.**
  - **E.g., αὐτῇ – from αὐτός, feminine singular dative, "to her."**

Declension	2	1	2
Gender	M	F	N
SN	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
SG	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
SD	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
SA	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
PN	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
PG	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
PD	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
PA	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

Paradigm for αὐτός

- **What is the lexical form?**
- **With what does it always begin?**
- **What do you list when you parse it?**

Declension	2	1	2
Gender	M	F	N
SN			
SG			
SD			
SA			
PN			
PG			
PD			
PA			

Distinguishing Uses of αὐτος by Context
But Clues Exist

- **Personal Pronoun**
  - Gender, number, and case are NOT set by a noun that it modifies.
  - Does NOT modify a noun like an adjective does.
- **Adjectival intensive (himself, herself, itself, ...)**
  - Gender, number, and case are set by the noun that it modifies.
  - Usually in the "predicate position"
    - Predicate position never has an article.
    - E.g., ὁ ὄχλος αὐτος = the crowd itself
  - Usually in the nominative case
- **Identical adjective (same)**
  - Gender, number, and case are set by the noun that it modifies.
  - Usually in the "attributive position"
    - Article in front of the adjective is attributive.
    - E.g., ὁ αὐτος ὄχλος = the same crowd

Distinguishing the Uses of αὐτός

Example	English	Use	Why?
αὐτὸς λέγει	he says	personal pronoun	not modifying a noun
τὸν Ἰησοῦν αὐτόν	the Jesus himself	adjectival intensive	context + predicate position
ὁ αὐτὸς Ἰησοῦς	the same Jesus	identical adjective	context + attributive position

Translate each item
and identify how αὐτος is being used.

- **Luke 23:40b.** ἐν (**"under"**) τῷ αὐτῷ κρίματι (**"judgment"**) εἶ.

- **1 Thes 4:16a.** ὅτι αὐτὸς ὁ κύριος **… will descend with a shout**

- **1 Cor 12:4.** Διαιρέσεις (**"various"**) δὲ χαρισμάτων (**"gifts"**) εἰσίν, τὸ δὲ αὐτὸ πνεῦμα

- **Romans 8:23** ἡμεῖς καὶ <u>αὐτοὶ</u> ἐν ἑαυτοῖς (**"ourselves"**) στενάζομεν (**"we groan"**)

- **Mark 12:36a.** αὐτὸς Δαυὶδ εἶπεν (**"said"**) ἐν τῷ πνεύματι τῷ ἁγίῳ

- **John 2:24a.** αὐτὸς δὲ Ἰησοῦς οὐκ ἐπίστευεν (**"he was entrusting"**) αὐτὸν αὐτοῖς

- **Luke 13:31a.** Ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ ὥρᾳ προσῆλθάν (**"they approached"**) τινες Φαρισαῖοι

Examples are from Daniel B. Wallace, Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics.

Miscellaneous from Mounce Chapter 12

- **Correlative conjunctions connect two grammatically equal clauses.**

  - μέν … δέ = "on the one hand… on the other hand."

  - καί … καί = "both… and."

English Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

- **The two demonstratives are distinguished by relative proximity.**
  - **"this" and "these" refer to relatively near things.**
  - **"That" and "those" refer to relatively far things.**

- **Demonstratives can be used either as a pronoun or as an adjective.**
  - **Pronoun use: "Give <u>this</u> to her." "Give <u>that</u> to him."**
  - **Adjectival use: "<u>This</u> book is red." "I like <u>that</u> book."**

- **English demonstratives have number ("this" vs. "these"), but do not have case or gender.**

Greek Demonstratives Are Like English

- **Greek demonstratives are the same as English,
  except that they have case and gender.**

- **The two demonstratives are distinguished by relative proximity.**

  - **οὗτος refers to relatively near things.**

  - **ἐκεῖνος refers to relatively far things.**

- **They have case, number, and gender.**

  - **They do not have person
    (I suppose some might consider them to all be third person).**

  - **They can be used either as a pronoun
    or as an attributive adjective.**

Greek Demonstratives Can Be Used As Pronouns

- **Greek demonstratives can be used either as a pronoun or as an attributive adjective.**

- **Pronoun use**

    - **Not modifying a substantive (e.g. a noun).**

    - **Case is determined by its function in the sentence.**

    - **Number and gender are determined by the antecedent.**

    - **You may need to add an additional word in your translation. Use the appropriate gender and number. E.g. "that man," or "those women."**

    - **Sometimes translated "he," "she," "it," or "they" instead of "this" or "that."**

Greek Demonstratives Can Be Used As Attributive Adjectives

- **Greek demonstratives can be used either as a pronoun or as an attributive adjective.**

- **Adjectival use**

  - **Always modifying a substantive (e.g. a noun).**

  - **Written in the "predicate position" (no article) but translated as an attributive.**

  - **Case, number, and gender match the noun that it is modifying.**

What Sets Gender, Number, and Case
of Adjectives and Pronouns

	Gender	Number	Case
Attributive Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Predicate Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Demonstrative Adjective	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies	Agrees with what it modifies
Adverbial Adjective	Usually neuter	??	Usually accusative
Substantival Adjective	Natural gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause
Personal Pronoun	Lexical gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause
Demonstrative Pronoun	Lexical gender of what it stands for	Number of what it stands for	Function in its clause

Paradigm of οὗτος, meaning "this"

- **Lexical form is** οὗτος
- **Always has a rough breathing or a tau to distinguish it from** αὐτός.
- **Neuter singular nominative and accusative lacks a final nu. Bare stem instead.**
- **If the final syllable includes alpha or eta, then the first vowel is alpha. Otherwise it is omicron.**

declension	2	1	2	English
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter	
singular nominative	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	this
singular genitive	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	of this
singular dative	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	to this
singular accusative	τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	this
plural nominative	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα	these
plural genitive	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων	of these
plural dative	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις	to these
plural accusative	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα	these

Paradigm of ἐκεῖνος, meaning "that"

- **Lexical form is ἐκεῖνος**

- **Neuter singular nominative and accusative lacks a final nu. Bare stem instead.**

declension	2	1	2	English
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter	
singular nominative	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο	that
singular genitive	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου	of that
singular dative	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ	to that
singular accusative	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο	that
plural nominative	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα	those
plural genitive	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	of those
plural dative	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις	to those
plural accusative	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα	those

Vocative Case Is Used for Direct Address

- **This is the fifth (and final ☺) case**
- **Used only for direct address.**
  - **"Nor everyone saying to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter…" (Matt 7:21)**
  - **You can usually detect direct address from the context.**
- **Rarely used (< 400 times in the GNT).**
- **Direct address usually uses the nominative instead of the vocative.**
  - **This is called the "vocative use of the nominative."**
- **The Vocative never has the article.**
  - **There is no vocative form of the article.**

Vocative is usually the same form as nominative.

- In the plural, vocative always uses the nominative plural form.

- In neuters, vocative always uses the nominative/accusative form.

- So you could parse neuters as nominative/accusative/vocative instead of nominative/accusative, but the vocative is so rare I wouldn't bother.

- In feminine first declension, vocative is the same as the nominative.

- In M/F singular second declension, the case ending is usually epsilon. Κύριε, Κύριε.

- In M/F singular third declension, the vocative is the bare stem (possibly with ablaut).

How do you distinguish nominative from vocative?

- **If there is an article, it can't be vocative.**
- **My parsing style:**
  - **Only parse as a vocative if there is a distinct form for the vocative.**
  - **Otherwise, parse it as a nominative.**
    - **And if it is clearly used as a vocative, then consider it a "nominative used as a vocative," which is a type of use of the nominative according to Wallace.**

Adjectives Have Degree

- **Adjectives have one of three degrees:**
    - **positive (good, big)**
    - **comparative (better, bigger)**
    - **superlative (best, biggest).**
- **The degrees are sometimes interchanged.**
    - **So "good" can sometimes mean "best," etc.**
- **Form comparatives and superlatives by adding an ending to the masculine stem and then inflecting as normal. The table below lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms (from Mounce, *The Morphology of Biblical Greek*).**

	Singular Nominative Form		
	masculine	feminine	neuter
2-1-2 comparative	τερος	τερα	τερον
3-3 comparative	(ι)ων	(ι)ων	(ι)ον
2-1-2 superlative	τατος	τατη	τατον
2-1-2 superlative (alternate)	ιστος	ιστη	ιστον

English:
A Relative Pronoun Begins A Relative Clause

- **English relative pronouns: who, whom, that, which, whose, whoever, whomever, and whichever.**

- **Introduces a relative clause.**

  - **e.g., "Jesus is the one <u>whom I love</u>."**

  - **Always (?) the first word of the relative clause.**

- **Relative pronouns do not ask questions.**

  - **e.g., in "Whom do you love?" 'whom' is an interrogative pronoun, not a relative pronoun.**

  - **Many English relative pronouns do double duty, functioning as relative pronouns sometime, and functioning as interrogative pronouns at other times.**

  - **Greek relative pronouns never (?) act as interrogative pronouns.**

Practice: Underline and Identify Pronouns
(Personal, Relative, Demonstrative, and Interrogative)

- Jesus loves me.

- Whom does Jesus love?

- For whom did Jesus die?

- Jesus laid down His life for those whom the Father gave Him.

- Do good to those who hate you.

- Which book do you want?

- I want that book, the one which I was planning to read this day.

- God made Him, who knew no sin, to be sin for us, that we might become the righteousness of God in Him.

Relative Clauses are <u>Dependent</u> Clauses

- **As clauses**
  - **relative clauses have their own subject and predicate.**
- **As dependent clauses**
  - **Relative clauses must be attached to an independent clause.**
  - **Relative clauses never contain the main verb of the sentence.**
- **The relative clause can be:**
  - **the subject of the independent clause**
    - **e.g., "<u>Whoever is not with me</u> is against me."**
  - **the direct object of the independent clause**
    - **e.g., "Eat <u>what is placed before you</u>."**
  - **the indirect object of the independent clause**
    - **e.g., "Give <u>whoever asks for it</u> the Bible."**
  - **related to the independent clause in another way.**

Practice: Underline the Relative Clause
and Indicate Its Relation to the Independent Clause.

- Whoever is with me is not against me.

- Eat what is placed before you.

- Give whoever asks for it the Bible.

- God made Him, who knew no sin, to be sin for us.

- How blessed is the man who does not walk in the counsel of the wicked.

- He will be like a tree which is planted by streams of water.

- We were dead in our sins in which we walked.

Paradigm of the Relative Pronoun ὅς

- **The lexical form is ὅς.**
- **Always has both a rough breathing mark and an accent.**
- **In the FSN, MPN, FPN, and NSNa (circled), the accent is the only thing distinguishing the relative pronoun from the article!**

declension	2	1	2	English
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter	
singular nominative	ὅς	(ἥ)	(ὅ)	who/which/that
singular genitive	οὗ	ἧς	οὗ	of whom/of which
singular dative	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	to whom/to which
singular accusative	ὅν	ἥν	(ὅ)	whom/which/that
plural nominative	(οἵ)	(αἵ)	ἅ	who/which/that
plural genitive	ὧν	ὧν	ὧν	of whom/of which
plural dative	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	to whom/to which
plural accusative	οὕς	ἅς	ἅ	whom/which/that

Practice: Fill in the Paradigm Table for ὅς

declension				English
gender	masculine	feminine	neuter	
singular nominative				
singular genitive				
singular dative				
singular accusative				
plural nominative				
plural genitive				
plural dative				
plural accusative				

Greek Relative Pronouns Are Like English, But Have Gender, Number, and Case

- **When translating, keep the relative clause together as a unit.**
  - **The relative clause will always (?) be contiguous, although the independent clause may not be.**
  - **"Jesus / spoke / what is righteous / to us."**
- **Greek relative pronouns have gender, number, and case.**
  - **Gender and number are the same as the antecedent substantive.**
  - **The case of the relative pronoun depends on its function in the relative clause. It does NOT match the CASE of the antecedent.**
    - **The man <u>whom we know</u> teaches us.**
    - **ὁ ἄνθρωπος <u>ὃν γινώσκομεν</u> διδάσκει ἡμᾶς.**
    - **ὃν is accusative because it is the direct object in the r.c.**

What Sets Gender, Number, and Case of Adjectives and Pronouns

	Gender	Number	Case
Attributive Adjective	**Agrees with what it modifies**	**Agrees with what it modifies**	**Agrees with what it modifies**
Predicate Adjective	**Agrees with what it modifies**	**Agrees with what it modifies**	**Agrees with what it modifies**
Demonstrative Adjective	**Agrees with what it modifies**	**Agrees with what it modifies**	**Agrees with what it modifies**
Adverbial Adjective	**Usually neuter**	**??**	**Usually accusative**
Substantival Adjective	**Natural gender of what it stands for**	**Number of what it stands for**	**Function in its clause**
Personal Pronoun	**Lexical gender of what it stands for**	**Number of what it stands for**	**Function in its clause**
Demonstrative Pronoun	**Lexical gender of what it stands for**	**Number of what it stands for**	**Function in its clause**
Relative Pronoun	**Lexical gender of what it stands for**	**Number of what it stands for**	**Function in its clause (a relative clause!)**

Practice: Underline the Relative Clause.
Circle the Relative Pronoun and Write the RP in Greek

- ὁ ἄνθρωπος, **whom we know, he teaches** ἡμᾶς.
- ἡ γυνή, **whom we know, she teaches** ἡμᾶς.
- οἱ ἀνθρώποι, **whom we know, they teach** ἡμᾶς.
- αἱ γυναῖκες, **whom we know, they teach** ἡμᾶς.
- ὁ Ἰησοῦς **loves** τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑπὲρ **whom He died.**
- ὁ Ἰησοῦς **loves** τὴν γυναῖκα ὑπὲρ **whom He died.**
- ὁ Ἰησοῦς **loves** τοὺς ἄνθρωπους ὑπὲρ **whom He died.**
- ὁ Ἰησοῦς **loves** τὰς γυναῖκας ὑπὲρ **whom He died.**

Exceptions About the Case and Gender
of Relative Pronouns

- Sometimes the antecedent is absent and must be supplied from the context.

- Gender normally matches the lexical gender of the antecedent.
  - Sometimes RP uses the natural gender of the antecedent.

- Case of RP normally fits its use in the relative clause.
  - <u>Attraction</u>: Sometimes the RP matches the case of the antecedent, violating the syntax of the relative clause.
  - ἐκ τοῦ πνεύματος οὗ ἡμῖν ἔδωκεν.
  - "by the spirit which he has given to us."
  - The relative pronoun οὗ is genitive. It should have been accusative, because it is the direct object of the verb ἔδωκεν, but it is in the genitive because it was attracted to the case of its antecedent πνεύματος.

- **Indefinite Relative Pronouns**

  - **Whoever, whichever, whatever**

  - **ὅστις is the indefinite relative pronoun**

  - **When ὅς is followed by ἄν or ἐάν,**
    it acts like an indefinite relative pronoun.

- **Time**

  - **Dative of time is when something happened.**

    - **"At the third hour…"**

  - **Accusative of time is how long something took.**

    - **"For three hours…"**

Review:
Gender, Number, and Case

- **Describe: articles, nouns, articles, regular adjectives (What 4 uses?), demonstratives (What 2 uses?), personal pronouns (What persons?), and relative pronouns.**

- **Gender**
  - **What genders exist in Greek?**
  - **What sets the gender of the things we've studied?**

- **Number**
  - **What numbers exist in Greek?**
  - **What sets the number of the things we've studied?**

- **Case**
  - **What cases exist in Greek?**
  - **What sets the case of the things we've studied?**

Review: If a noun (etc.) ends in the following, What is its likely Gender, Number, and Case?

α (not μα) {5}		μα {3}	
ᾳ {1}		ο {2}	
αι {2}		οι {2}	
αις {1}		οις {2}	
αν {1}		ον {4}	
ας {2}		ου {2}	
ε {1}		ους {2}	
ες {3}		ος {3}	
η {2}		σι {3}	
ῃ {1}		σιν {3}	
ην {1}		ῳ {2}	
ης {1}		ων {3}	
ι (not αι, οι, σι) {3}			

Road Map:
Verbs for the Rest of the Year, Starting With Indicative Mood

- **0-4: Introductory matters**

- **5-14: Nouns, etc.**

- **15-35: Verb Stuff**
  - – **15-25: Indicative Mood**
  - – **26-30: Participles**
  - – **31-33: Non-Indicative Moods**
  - – **34-35: μι Verbs**

- **15: Introduction**
- **16: Present Active**
- **17: Vowel Contraction**
- **18: Present Middle and Passive**
- **19: Future Active and Middle**
- **20: Verbal Roots**
- **21: Imperfect**
- **22-23: Aorist Active and Middle**
- **24: Aorist and Future Passive**
- **25: Perfect**

Verbs are Inflected to Show Many Things

- **Verb**
  - Describes an action (e.g. "God <u>loves</u> me.")
  - or a state of being (e.g. "God <u>is</u> love."). "copulative verb"

- <u>Person</u>: 1st, 2nd, or 3rd.
- <u>Number</u>: Singular or Plural
- <u>Tense</u>: aorist, present, future, imperfect, pluperfect, perfect, future perfect
  - <u>Aspect</u>: continuous, perfect, or undefined (buried in the tense).
  - <u>Time</u>: past, present, or future. (buried in the tense).
- <u>Voice</u>: active, middle, or passive.
- <u>Mood</u>: indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or optative.

A Verb Has <u>Person</u> and <u>Number</u>
to Agree with its Subject

- **<u>Person</u>: 1st, second, or 3rd.**
  - **<u>1st person</u>: Refers to the person or persons speaking. (I or we)**
  - **<u>2nd person</u>: Refers to the person or persons spoken to. (you)**
  - **<u>3rd person</u>: Refers to anybody else. (he, she, it, or they)**
- **<u>Number</u>: singular or plural.**
- **Every verb has a subject (either explicit or implied).**
  - **Explicit subject (e.g. "You must repent!")**
  - **Implicit subject (e.g. "Repent!")**
- **Every verb agrees with its subject in person and number.**
  - **A 1st person subject requires a 1st person verb, etc.**
    - **"I go." and "He goes." not "I goes." and "He go."**
  - **A singular subject requires a singular verb, etc.**
    - **"He goes." and "They go." not "He go." and "They goes."**
  - **Exception: Neuter plural subjects take singular verbs unless the individuality of each subject is stressed.**

A Verb Has <u>Aspect</u> to Indicate Its "ongoingness."
A Verb Has <u>Time</u> to Indicate When It Occurs.

- <u>Aspect</u>: continuous, perfect, or undefined
  - There is no simple English equivalent of perfect aspect, so it is somewhat difficult to translate. This will be discussed in detail in chapter 25.

- <u>Time</u>: past, present, or future.
  - Outside of the indicative mood, time is subtle or non-existent.

ASPECT	MEANING	EXAMPLES
Continuous ("imperfective")	Ongoing action	Jesus was dying. Jesus is dying. Jesus will be dying.
Undefined ("aoristic")	No information is given about the aspect.	Jesus died. Jesus dies. Jesus will die.
Perfect ("perfective")	State resulting from previously completed action.	Jesus had died. Jesus has died. Jesus will have died.

Example: "Jesus Rises"
Written in Different Times and Aspects

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
UNDEFINED ASPECT	Jesus rose.	Jesus rises.	Jesus will rise.
CONTINUOUS ASPECT	Jesus was rising.	Jesus is rising.	Jesus will be rising.
PERFECT ASPECT	Jesus was risen.	Jesus is risen.	Jesus will be risen.

Fill in the Table Using "Jesus Rises"
In the Indicated Time and Aspect

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
UNDEFINED ASPECT			
CONTINUOUS ASPECT			
PERFECT ASPECT			

The <u>Tense</u> Indicates the <u>Aspect</u> and <u>Time</u>

- <u>Tense</u>: aorist, present, future, imperfect, pluperfect, perfect, future perfect.

- Note that the present and future tenses can have either continuous or undefined aspect.

  - Scholars debate over whether the future can have continuous aspect.

- Therefore, the present tense in Greek for "I say" (λέγω) might indicate a continuous action ("I am saying") or it might not indicate anything about the aspect of the action ("I say").

- Table follows David Allan Black, *It's Still Greek to Me*, page 102.

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

A Verb Has Voice
To Indicate Its Relationship with the Subject

- **<u>Voice</u>: active, middle, or passive.**

VOICE	MEANING	EXAMPLE
Active Voice	The subject performs the verb.	Sue studied Greek.
Middle Voice	--See below--	
Passive Voice	The verb is performed on the subject.	Greek was studied.

- **Middle voice:**
  - **Originally indicated that the subject performed the verb on herself (e.g., "Sue studied herself.") or for her own self interest ("Sue studied Greek for herself.")**
  - **The middle voice has other, more common uses, that will be explained in chapter 18.**

Example: The Meaning "Jesus loves me"
Expressed in Different Times, Aspects, and Voices

Active Voice

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
UNDEFINED ASPECT	Jesus loved me.	Jesus loves me.	Jesus will love me.
CONTINUOUS ASPECT	Jesus was loving me.	Jesus is loving me.	Jesus will be loving me.
PERFECT ASPECT	Jesus had loved me.	Jesus has loved me.	Jesus will have loved me.

Passive Voice

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
UNDEFINED ASPECT	I was loved by Jesus.	I am loved by Jesus.	I will be loved by Jesus.
CONTINUOUS ASPECT	I was being loved by Jesus.	I am being loved by Jesus.	I will be being loved by Jesus.
PERFECT ASPECT	I had been loved by Jesus.	I have been loved by Jesus.	I will have been loved by Jesus.

Express the Meaning "Jesus loves me" in Different Times, Aspects, and Voices

Active Voice

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
UNDEFINED ASPECT			
CONTINUOUS ASPECT			
PERFECT ASPECT			

Passive Voice

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
UNDEFINED ASPECT			
CONTINUOUS ASPECT			
PERFECT ASPECT			

A Verb Has Mood
To Indicate the Relationship Between the Verb and Reality.

- **Mood: indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or optative.**
  - **Indicative deals with the way things are, were, or will be. (Ch. 15-25).**
  - **Subjunctive deals with probabilities or possibilities. (Chapter 31).**
  - **Imperative deals with commands. (Chapter 33).**
  - **Optative deals with possibilities. (Chapter 35).**
    - **There is no simple English equivalent for the optative.**
    - **The meanings of the subjunctive and optative overlap because the subjunctive is taking over the role of the optative in Koine Greek.**

- **These definitions are overly simplistic.**
  - **One can give a command in the indicative or subjunctive.**
  - **The subjunctive has many uses.**

- **In the Koine period, the subjunctive was killing off the optative.**
  - **The subjunctive is used for things that would have used the optative in classical Greek.**
  - **The optative is very rare (< 70 in the GNT).**

Lexical Form: The Present Active Indicative
1st Person Singular Form (PAI1S)

- **Lexical form is the
  present active indicative, first-person singular form (PAI1S)**

- **If this form doesn't exist, then another form will be the lexical form.**
  - **E.g. If the verb is deponent in the present tense, then
    the Present Middle/Passive first person singular (PMp1S) form
    will be the lexical form.**
    - **The last bullet won't make sense until chapter 18,
      which explains deponent verbs.**

- **Parse a verb:**
  - **Lexical form**
  - **Tense**: imperfect, aorist, pluperfect, present, perfect, future, or future perfect
  - **Voice**: active, middle, or passive
  - **Mood**: indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or optative
  - **Person**: 1st, 2nd, or 3rd
  - **Number**: singular or plural
- **Note that time and aspect are not part of the parsing, because they are already implied by the tense.**
- **Example of parsing:**
  - λυθῶσι **is from** λύω, **aorist passive subjunctive, 3rd person plural, meaning "they probably were loosed."**

Verb Inflection:
Verb May Start With an Augment or Reduplication

- **Inflected form = Augment? + Reduplication? + <u>Tense stem</u> + Tense formative? + Connecting vowel? + Mood formative? + <u>Personal ending</u>**

- <u>**Augment**</u>**: In the indicative mood of the aorist and imperfect tenses (and sometimes the pluperfect), the verb is augmented, which is a change to the beginning of the verb. Chapter 21.**

- <u>**Reduplication**</u>**: In the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses, the verb is reduplicated, which is a change to the beginning of the verb. Chapter 25.**

- **Most verb forms have neither an augment nor reduplication.**

- **The pluperfect is the only tense that can have both augment and reduplication, but sometimes the pluperfect reduplicates but doesn't augment.**

  - **Perhaps sometimes doing both seemed like too much work!**

Verb Inflection:
The Tense Stem is The Center of The Inflected Form

- **Inflected form = Augment? + Reduplication? + <u>Tense stem</u> + Tense formative? + Connecting vowel? + Mood formative? + <u>Personal ending</u>**
  - **Always have tense stem and personal ending.**

- <u>**Tense stem**</u> **(a.k.a. "stem") is the form that the root takes in a particular tense and voice. For many words, in many tenses the tense stem is the same as the root.**
  - <u>**Root**</u>**: The base form of a verb that explains all of its tense stems.**
  - **Roots and tense stems are theoretical.**
  - **Mounce marks roots with an asterisk (e.g. *λυ)**
  - **Most verbs have one root and multiple tense stems.**

- <u>**Tense formative**</u>**: a set of letters that help indicate the tense and voice.**

Verb Inflection:
Verb Ends With A Personal Ending

- **Inflected form = Augment? + Reduplication? + <u>Tense stem</u> + Tense formative? + Connecting vowel? + Mood formative? + <u>Personal ending</u>**
  - Always have tense stem and personal ending.

- <u>Connecting vowel</u>: **Certain tense stems have a vowel between the tense stem and the personal ending. These were presumably to make pronunciation easier.**

- <u>Personal ending</u>:
  - indicates number and person.
  - Different tenses, voices, and moods use different sets of personal endings, so the personal ending also helps indicate the tense, voice, and mood.

Meaning of Present Active Indicative (PAI)

- **Present tense:**
  - Present tense implies present time (in the indicative mood).
    - Present time from the standpoint of the <u>writer</u>.
      (What was present time in 30 A.D. is past time for us!)
  - Present tense implies either continuous or undefined aspect.

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

- <u>Active voice</u> implies that the subject performs the action.
- <u>Indicative mood</u> implies that the verb deals with reality
  - not a possibility, command, or wish. (This is an oversimplification).

- General pattern for all verbs:
    - Augment? + Reduplication? + <u>Tense stem</u> + Tense formative? + Connecting vowel? + Mood formative? + <u>Personal ending</u>
    - Always have tense stem and personal ending

- PAI = present tense stem + connecting vowel + primary active personal ending

- Note that the PAI lacks these things:
    - No augment, no reduplication
    - No tense formative, no mood formative
- Note that there IS a connecting vowel in the PAI.
- As always, a tense stem and a personal ending are present.

Present Tense Stem

- **Because the PAI1S is the lexical form, you will memorize it, so you should be able to figure out the present tense stem from the lexical form.**

- **The present tense stem is formed from the verbal root.**
  - **Different verbs form the present tense stem from the verbal root in different ways. (Mounce's *Morphology* lists 6 basic categories with many subcategories.)**
  - **Therefore, you won't necessarily be able to figure out the root from the present tense.**
  - **If you can't figure out the root from the present tense form for a particular verb, you should memorize the root in addition to memorizing the lexical form.**
  - **Because the other tense stems tend to be either the root or something close to the root, if you know the root, you can usually recognize the other tense stems.**

Connecting Vowels
for the Indicative Mood

- **Verbs in the indicative mood always use the following connecting vowels.**
- **Memorize this table. (Sing to either *The Immigrant Song* by Led Zeppelin or the march of the guards of the Wicked Witch of the West from *The Wizard of Oz*)**

PERSON & NUMBER	CONNECTING VOWEL
1S	o
2S	ε
3S	ε
1P	o
2P	ε
3P	o

- **The alternative to memorizing the table is to memorize that in the indicative mood, the connecting vowel is: (1) omicron if the personal ending begins with mu or nu, (2) epsilon if the personal ending begins with something else, and (3) either epsilon or omicron if there is no personal ending (i.e., the personal ending is "-"). So for (3) you still need to memorize part of the table.**

The PAI Uses
the "Primary Active" Personal Endings

- **The PAI uses the following personal endings.**
  - **Mounce teaches that the 2S ending is sigma and then an iota is added everywhere except the perfect active indicative. We teach that it is iota+sigma everywhere except the perfect active indicative.**

- **Mounce calls them the "primary active" endings.**

- **You can also call them the "unaugmented active" endings.**
  - **They are always used in the active voice if there is no augment.**
  - **They are also used for the aorist passive, but the passive in other tenses use different endings, so we'll call them "active."**

- **Memorize this table.**

PERSON & NUMBER	PERSONAL ENDING
1S	–
2S	ις
3S	ι
1P	μεν
2P	τε
3P	νσι(ν)

The PAI Uses
the "Primary Active" Personal Endings

- The connecting vowel combines with the personal endings.
- **PAI1S:** Note that the connecting vowel lengthens to compensate for the lack of a personal ending (Chapter 17).
- **PAI3P:** The NU drops out because of the following sigma (Chapter 10), and the connecting vowel lengthens to compensate for it (Chapter 17).
- Memorize this table.

PERSON & NUMBER	CONNECTING VOWEL	PERSONAL ENDING	CV + PE
1S	o	–	o + "–" ➜ o– ➜ ω
2S	ε	ις	ε + ις ➜ εις
3S	ε	ι	ε + ι ➜ ει
1P	o	μεν	o + μεν ➜ oμεν
2P	ε	τε	ε + τε ➜ ετε
3P	o	νσι(ν)	o + νσι(ν) ➜ oνσι(ν) ➜ oσι(ν) ➜ oυσι(ν)

PAI Inflection Example: λύω

- **PAI1S: Note that the connecting vowel lengthens to compensate for the lack of a personal ending (Chapter 17).**
- **PAI3P: The NU drops out because of the following sigma (Chapter 10), and the connecting vowel lengthens to compensate for it (Chapter 17).**

Person & #	Present Tense Stem	Con. Vowel	Personal Ending	PAI Form	Meaning
1S	λυ	ο	–	λυ + ο + – ➜ λυο ➜ λύω	I loose.
2S	λυ	∈	ις	λυ + ∈ + ις ➜ λύεις	You loose.
3S	λυ	∈	ι	λυ + ∈ + ι ➜ λύει	He/She/It looses.
1P	λυ	ο	μεν	λυ + ο + μεν ➜ λύομεν	We loose.
2P	λυ	∈	τε	λυ + ∈ + τε ➜ λύετε	You loose.
3P	λυ	ο	νσι(ν)	λυ + ο + νσι(ν) ➜ λύονσι(ν) ➜ λύουσι(ν)	They loose.

Redundant Personal Pronouns
in the Nominative Case Emphasize the Subject.

- **Personal pronouns (ἐγώ, σύ, αὐτός) are not needed as subjects because the subject can be identified through the personal ending.**
  - **E.g., λύω means "I loose." In English we need to add the 1st person singular personal pronoun "I" to indicate the subject, but in Greek, we already know that the subject is 1st person singular because of the personal ending used.**
  - **Therefore, when the Greek personal pronoun is used for the subject, it is redundant and is probably there for emphasis on the subject. "I loose."**

- **The third person personal pronoun (αὐτός) is sometimes used in the nominative for subject emphasis with a first or second person verb. The verb is still first or second person, but the subject is emphasized.**
  - **E.g. "We also <u>ourselves</u> in ourselves groan" (Rom 8:23b)**
    ἡμεῖς καὶ <u>αὐτοὶ</u> ἐν ἑαυτοῖς στενάζομεν
  - **Using the third person pronoun specifies the subject's gender.**

17.1

1. **Motivation & Concepts**

2. **Contracting Single Vowel + Single Vowel**

3. **Contracting Single Vowel + Diphthong**

4. **Applications & Miscellaneous**

Contract Verbs Are Irregular
Unless You Know the Contract Vowel Rules

- The verb with lexical form ἀγαπάω has present tense stem ἀγαπα.

- If you add the connecting vowel and personal ending that you learned for λύω in chapter 16, you get the wrong form for everything in the PAI.

	PTS	CV	PE	CV + PE	"Expected"	Actual
1S	ἀγαπα	ο	–	ω	ἀγαπάω	ἀγαπῶ
2S	ἀγαπα	ε	ις	εις	ἀγαπάεις	ἀγαπᾷς
3S	ἀγαπα	ε	ι	ει	ἀγαπάει	ἀγαπᾷ
1P	ἀγαπα	ο	μεν	ομεν	ἀγαπάομεν	ἀγαπῶμεν
2P	ἀγαπα	ε	τε	ετε	ἀγαπάετε	ἀγαπᾶτε
3P	ἀγαπα	ο	νσι(ν)	ουσι(ν)	ἀγαπάουσι(ν)	ἀγαπῶσι(ν)

- Chapter 17 teaches the contract vowel rules so that you will understand the forms of ἀγαπάω and other contract verbs.

- Chapter 17 also explains why omicron lengthens to omega in the PAI1S (λύω) and lengthens to ου in the PAI3P (λύουσιν).

**Contract Verbs Have a Stem Ending In
Alpha, Epsilon, or Omicron**

- **Contract verb**: verb whose tense stem ends in alpha, epsilon, or omicron.
  - The present tense stem ἀγαπα makes ἀγαπάω a contract verb.
  - ➢ Are these stems contract verbs? ποιε, πληρο, λυ, βλεπ
  - Note that the <u>tense stem</u> is the issue, not the root or the lexical form.
  - For most contract verbs, all tense stems are the same as the root.
  - Advanced: This does not apply to μι verbs (chapters 34-35).
    - μι verbs only contract in the 2nd Aorist Active Infinitive.

- **Contract vowel**: the alpha, epsilon, or omicron that is the final letter of the tense stem of a verb.
  - ➢ What are the contract vowels in these? ἀγαπα, ποιε, πληρο, λυ, βλεπ

- **Contract verbs are classified by their contract vowel.**
  - The stem ἀγαπα is an alpha contract verb because it ends in alpha.
  - ➢ What class are these verb stems? ἀγαπα, ποιε, πληρο, λυ, βλεπ

Contract Verbs
Follow Rules When They Inflect

- **Contract verbs inflect just like all other verbs, except as follows:**
  - **The contract vowel contracts with the connecting vowel if they touch.**
    - **This happens in the present and the imperfect tenses.**
  - **The contract vowel lengthens if it can't contract.**
    - **This happens in all tenses other than the present and the imperfect.**

- **This chapter teaches the rules for lengthening and contraction.**
  - **Alpha contracts and lengthens one way.**
  - **Epsilon contracts and lengthens another way.**
  - **Omicron contracts and lengthens a third way.**
  - **That is why Mounce classifies contract verbs by their contract vowel.**

- **There are some exceptions to the rules** ☹
  - **E.g., Ζάω is treated as if it were an alpha contract verb. But it breaks the rules unless you consider it an eta contract verb, spelled Ζήω.**

- **The lexical form of contract verbs has the contract vowel.**
    - **e.g. Memorize ἀγαπάω "I love."**
    - **The lexicon lists it as ἀγαπάω, so that is how to look it up.**

- **The contract vowel doesn't show up in the PAI1S because it contracts and disappears.**
    - **You will never see ἀγαπάω written in a real text.**
    - **Instead, you will see ἀγαπῶ, because the alpha contract vowel has contracted with the omega to form ἀγαπῶ.**
    - **But lexicons show the contract vowel because you need to know the contract vowel to understand the inflected forms.**

Questions on Contract Verb Concepts

➢ **What is a contract verb?**

➢ **What is a contract vowel?**

➢ **What classes of contract verbs exist?**

➢ **How does a contract vowel affect the form of a verb?**

➢ **How does a contract vowel affect the meaning of a verb?**

➢ **What is unusual about the lexical form of a contract verb?**

➢ **What are the present tense stem, contract vowel, and PAI1S of the following lexical forms?**

    ➢ ἀγαπάω

    ➢ πληρόω

    ➢ φιλέω

    ➢ βλέπω

    ➢ λύω

    ➢ πιστεύω

    ➢ ποιέω

17.2

1. **Motivation & Concepts**

2. **Contracting Single Vowel + Single Vowel**

3. **Contracting Single Vowel + Diphthong**

4. **Applications & Miscellaneous**

Our Approach to Contract Verbs

- Mounce's approach has many rules, even though it doesn't cover all of the possibilities.

- Instead of teaching Mounce's approach in class, we'll be using a modified version of Lee Fields' paper "Those Pesky Contract Verbs," which he presented at the 2001 ETS meeting.

- My modifications to Fields' approach:
  - Eliminated the use of color (eliminate expensive copies & extra pens).
  - Reworded rules and re-labeled tables.
  - Made short and long alpha, and genuine and spurious diphthongs explicit in the tables.
  - Added two rules for diphthongs.
    - Eliminated all consistent exceptions.
    - Now can generate all of the contract vowel lists in Mounce, *The Morphology of Biblical Greek* and Smyth, *Greek Grammar*.

Spurious Diphthongs vs. Genuine Diphthongs

- **Every diphthong is either spurious or genuine.**
  - <u>**Spurious diphthong**</u>: **εı or ου** *that is due to previous contraction or lengthening* **from short grade in the basic vowel contract table. Spurious diphthongs are marked with an asterisk (*) in these tables.**
  - <u>**Genuine diphthong**</u>: **all other diphthongs, including εı formed by ε + ı, and ου formed by ο + υ.**

- ➤ **Define the following:**
  - ➤ **Improper Diphthong**
  - ➤ **Spurious Diphthong**
  - ➤ **Genuine Diphthong**
- ➤ **What distinguishes a spurious diphthong from a genuine diphthong?**

Use This Table
To Contract Two Single Vowels

	Short Vowel	Spurious Diphthong	Long Vowel
A-Type	short α	doesn't exist	long α
E-Type	ε	ει*	η
O-Type	o	ου*	ω

- **Iota and upsilon do not contract.**
- **Contraction ➔ Long vowel column**
  - **Exception: (εε, οο, εο, οε) ➔ spurious diphthong (ει* or ου*).**
- **Contraction ➔ Row of vowel that came first**
  - **Exception: O-Type (bottom row) if either starting vowel is O-Type.**
- **Spurious diphthong: ει or ου if created by previous contraction or lengthening.**
  - **Indicate spurious with asterisk: ει* and ου***
- **Examples:**
  - **αε ➔ α**   **(Long-Vowel Column, A-Type Row)**
  - **εα ➔ η**   **(Long-Vowel Column, E-Type Row)**
  - **οε ➔ ου***   **(Spurious Diphthong Column, E-Type Row)**
  - **οα ➔ ω**   **(Long-Vowel Column, O-Type Row)**

Questions –
Contracting Single Vowels

1. Fill in the table below.
2. What vowels aren't in the table? Why?
3. In what row is the result of contraction?
4. In what column is the result of contraction?
5. What is a spurious diphthong? How can you tell if a diphthong is spurious or not?

	Short Vowel	Spurious Diphthong	Long Vowel
A-Type			
E-Type			
O-Type			

Contracting Single Vowels

	Short Vowel	**Spurious Diphthong**	**Long Vowel**
A-Type	short α	doesn't exist	long α
E-Type	ε	ει*	η
O-Type	ο	ου*	ω

- **The table below can be created using the table above.**
  - **The left column is the first letter. The top row is the second letter.**

	Short α	**Long α**	ε	η	ι	υ	ο	ω
Short α	Long α	Long α	Long α	Long α	αι	αυ	ω	ω
Long α	Long α	Long α	Long α	Long α	ᾳ	αυ	ω	ω
ε	η	η	ει*	η	ει	ευ	ου*	ω
η	η	η	η	η	ῃ	ηυ	ω	ω
ι	ια	ια	ιε	ιη	ιι	ιυ	ιο	ιω
υ	υα	υα	υε	υη	υι	υυ	υο	υω
ο	ω	ω	ου*	ω	οι	ου	ου*	ω
ω	ω	ω	ω	ω	ῳ	ωυ	ω	ω

Practice –
Contracting Single Vowels

	Short Vowel	**Spurious Diphthong**	**Long Vowel**
A-Type			
E-Type			
O-Type			

- **Fill in the table below.**
  - **The left column is the first letter. The top row is the second letter.**

	Short α	**Long α**	**ε**	**η**	**ι**	**υ**	**ο**	**ω**
Short α								
Long α								
ε								
η								
ι								
υ								
ο								
ω								

17.3

1. **Motivation & Concepts**

2. **Contracting Single Vowel + Single Vowel**

3. **Contracting Single Vowel + Diphthong**

4. **Applications & Miscellaneous**

Rules for Contracting
A Single Vowel Followed by a Diphthong (Table 7)

1. **First, delete the second letter of the diphthong**
   IF the diphthong is υι, ει*, or ου*.
   - **Otherwise just keep the second letter of the diphthong.**
   - **Since the second letter of a diphthong is always iota or upsilon, the second letter of the diphthong will tack on or subscript, following the usual rules.**

2. **Second, contract the single vowel with the first vowel of the diphthong, just as if they were two single vowels.**

3. **Third, if you end up with three letters, then delete the middle letter so that the result will have only two letters.**

4. **Caveat: The combination ο + η contracts to ῳ according to the rules, but usually (not always) it contracts to οι instead, as if it were ο + ει.**

Start	ααι	ωηυ	αυι	ηει*	ηει	αει*	αει	οου*	οου
Step 1			αυ	ηε			αε		οο
Step 2	ᾳ	ωυ		η	ῃ	α	ᾳ	ου*	ου*υ
Step 3									ου

Questions –
Contracting A Single Vowel With a Diphthong

- These questions refer to contracting a single vowel with a following diphthong.
1. Under what circumstances do you begin by deleting the second vowel of the diphthong?
2. Which two letters do you contract?
3. What do you do if you end up with three letters?
4. What is the exception to the rules?
5. Fill in the table for a single vowel (left column) followed by a diphthong (top row).

	αι	ᾳ	ει	ει*	οι	αυ	ου	ου*	υι	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
long α													
short α													
ε													
η													
ο													
ω													

Answer Key to Questions – Contracting A Single Vowel With a Diphthong

- These questions refer to contracting a single vowel with a following diphthong.

1. Under what circumstances do you begin by deleting the second vowel of the diphthong? When the diphthong is spurious or υι.

2. Which two letters do you contract? The single vowel with the first letter of the diphthong.

3. What do you do if you end up with three letters? Delete the middle letter.

4. What is the exception to the rules? ο + ῃ ➔ ῳ by the rules, but often ➔ οι.

	αι	ᾳ	ει	ει*	οι	αυ	ου	ου*	υι	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
long α	ᾳ	ᾳ	ᾳ	α	ῳ	αυ	ωυ	ω	αυ	αυ	αυ	ᾳ	ῳ
short α	ᾳ	ᾳ	ᾳ	α	ῳ	αυ	ωυ	ω	αυ	αυ	αυ	ᾳ	ῳ
ε	ῃ	ῃ	ει	ει*	οι	ηυ	ου	ου*	ευ	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
η	ῃ	ῃ	ῃ	η	ῳ	ηυ	ωυ	ω	ηυ	ηυ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
ο	ῳ	ῳ	οι	ου*	οι	ωυ	ου	ου*	ου	ου	ωυ	ῳ / οι	ῳ
ω	ῳ	ῳ	ῳ	ω	ῳ	ωυ	ωυ	ω	ωυ	ωυ	ωυ	ῳ	ῳ

17.3 **How to Contract a Single Vowel Followed by a Diphthong**

1. **First, delete the second letter of the diphthong
   IF the diphthong is υ̣ι or is a <u>spurious diphthong</u>. (ο+ου* ➔ οο, ο+υι ➔ ου)**

   - **Otherwise just keep the second letter of the diphthong. (ο+ου ➔ οου)**

   - **Since the second letter of a diphthong is always iota or upsilon, the second
     letter of the diphthong will tack on or subscript, following the usual rules.**

2. **Second, contract the single vowel with the first vowel of the diphthong,
   just as if they were two single vowels. (ο+ου ➔ οου ➔ ουυ)**

3. **Third, if you end up with three letters, then delete the middle letter so that the
   result will have only two letters. (ο+ου ➔ οου ➔ ουυ ➔ ου)**

Start	ααυ	εαι	εα̣	εει*	εει
1. Delete 2nd letter if υι or spurious				εε	
2. Contract	αυ	ηι ➔ ῃ	ῃ	ει*	ει*ι
3. Delete middle letter if 3 letters					ει

Questions on Contracting a Single Vowel with a Diphthong

- ➤ **What is a spurious diphthong?**
- ➤ **What is a genuine diphthong?**
- ➤ **How do you distinguish a spurious diphthong from a genuine one?**
- ➤ **We've studied how a single vowel contracts with a diphthong that follows it. What happens if a diphthong is followed by a single vowel?**
  - ➤ **Show the steps for αι + ε.**
- ➤ **When contracting a single vowel with a diphthong that follows it:**
  - ➤ **What is the first step?**
  - ➤ **What is the second step?**
  - ➤ **What is the third step?**

Result of Contracting a Single Vowel with a Diphthong

- **The chart below can be produced by applying the preceding rules.**
- **The rules produce everything in Mounce's Morphology Book and Smyth's Greek Grammar!**
- **All spurious diphthongs are marked with an asterisk (*).**
- **Caveat: The combination ο + η contracts to ῳ according to the rules, but usually (not always) it contracts to οι instead, as if it were ο + ει.**

	αι/ᾳ	ει	ει*	οι	αυ	ου	ου*	υι	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
α	ᾳ	ᾳ	long α	ῳ	αυ	ωυ	ω	αυ	αυ	αυ	ᾳ	ῳ
ε	ῃ	ει	ει*	οι	ηυ	ου	ου*	ευ	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
η	ῃ	ῃ	η	ῳ	ηυ	ωυ	ω	ηυ	ηυ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
ο	ῳ	οι	ου*	οι	ωυ	ου	ου*	ου	ου	ωυ	ῳ / οι	ῳ
ω	ῳ	ῳ	ω	ῳ	ωυ	ωυ	ω	ωυ	ωυ	ωυ	ῳ	ῳ

Practice:
Contract a Single Vowel with a Diphthong

- ➢ **What is the first step?**
- ➢ **What is the second step?**
- ➢ **What is the third step?**
- ➢ **What combination sometimes (but not always) breaks the rules?**

	αι/ᾳ	ει	ει*	οι	αυ	ου	ου*	υι	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
α												
ε												
η												
ο												
ω												

Roadmap of Chapter 17 – Contract Verbs

1. **Motivation & Concepts**

2. **Contracting Single Vowel + Single Vowel**

3. **Contracting Single Vowel + Diphthong**

4. **Applications & Miscellaneous**

17.4 Applying the contract rules to contract verbs in the PAI.

- **In the PAI, there is a circumflex accent over the contracted vowels.**
- **Contraction works from right to left.**
  - **Therefore, in the 1S and 3P forms of the PAI, the contract vowel contracts with ω and ουσι(ν), not with o and ονσι(ν).**
- **E.g. ἀγαπα+ο+νσι ➔ ἀγαπαονσι ➔ ἀγαπαοσι ➔ ἀγαπαουσι ➔ ἀγαπαοσι ➔ ἀγαπωσι**

- *nu will drop out before sigma.*
- *omicron will lengthen to spurious ου* to compensate.*
- *upsilon will drop out because it was from a spurious diphthong ου**
- *alpha and omicron will contract to omega.*

	connecting vowel + personal ending	*αγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1S	ω	ἀγαπῶ	ποιῶ	πληρῶ
2S	εις (genuine diphthong)	ἀγαπᾷς	ποιεῖς	πληροῖς
3S	ει (genuine diphthong)	ἀγαπᾷ	ποιεῖ	πληροῖ
1P	ομεν	ἀγαπῶμεν	ποιοῦμεν	πληροῦμεν
2P	ετε	ἀγαπᾶτε	ποιεῖτε	πληροῦτε
3P	ουσι(ν) (spurious diphthong)	ἀγαπῶσι(ν)	ποιοῦσι(ν)	πληροῦσι(ν)

Practice: Inflect Contract Verbs in the PAI

➢ **In what direction does contraction proceed?**

➢ **How are contract verbs accented in the PAI?**

P#	CV+PE	ἀγαπα*	ποιε*	πληρο*
1S				
2S				
3S				
1P				
2P				
3P				

- **The table for contracting vowels also works for lengthening vowels.**
- **When a letter drops out, the preceding vowel usually lengthens:**
  - **Short alpha lengthens to long alpha**
  - **Epsilon lengthens to ει***
  - **Omicron lengthens to ου***

Vowel Type	Short	Spurious Diphthong	Long
A-Type	**short α**	**doesn't exist**	**long α**
E-Type	ε	ει*	η
O-Type	ο	ου*	ω

- **This explains the third plural CV + PE**

P#	CV	PE	CV + PE
3P	ο	$νσι(ν)$	ο + $νσι(ν)$ ➔ $ονσι(ν)$ ➔ $οσι(ν)$ ➔ $ουσι(ν)$

- **In lengthening for reasons other than dropping a letter, omicron often lengthens to omega rather than to a spurious diphthong. E.g. PAI1S is λύω, not λύου.**

- οἶδα ("I know" or "I understand") is actually in the perfect tense, but it is treated as if it were present tense.

- Mounce wants you to memorize its inflection.

	Inflected Form	Translation
1st person singular	οἶδα	I know
2nd person singular	οἶδας	You know
3rd person singular	οἶδε(ν)	He/she/it knows
1st person plural	οἴδαμεν	We know
2nd person plural	οἴδατε	Y'all know
3rd person plural	οἴδασιν	They know

Review of Chapter 17

➢ **What is unusual about the word** οἶδα**?**

➢ **Define: Diphthong, Improper Diphthong, Spurious Diphthong, Genuine Diphthong, Contract Verb, Contract Vowel**

➢ **Fill in the following table and explain how to use it.**

Type	? Vowel		? Vowel
?-Type			
?-Type			
?-Type			

➢ **What are the three steps of contracting a vowel with a diphthong?**

➢ **In what direction does contraction proceed?**

➢ **What combination often (but not always) breaks the rules?**

➢ **What is the accent rule for contract verbs in the PAI?**

➢ **Parse and explain the following forms:** ἀγαπάω, ἀγαπῶ, ἀγαπᾷς, ἀγαπῶσιν, πληροῖς, ποιοῦμεν, πληροῖ, πληρόω, πληρῶ

Active Voice, the Subject Does the Action.
In Passive Voice, the Subject Receives the Action.

- **Active voice: The subject <u>performs</u> the action of the verb.**
  - **e.g. "I hit the ball."**
- **Passive voice: The subject <u>receives</u> the action of the verb.**
  - **e.g. "I was hit by the ball."**

- **What was passive to a Greek may sound active to us.**
  - **So if passive makes no sense in the context, look the verb up in a lexicon to see what it means in the passive.**
  - **E.g. φοβέω (active) means "I frighten," and φοβέομαι (passive) means "I am afraid" (i.e., "I am being frightened").**

- **The subject of a passive verb receives the action instead of doing the action. Therefore, unless additional words are given to indicate the doer of the action (usually either a dative or else ὑπό followed by a noun in the genitive), the one doing the action is unspecified (except by the context).**

Present Tense May Be Continuous or Aoristic Aspect

- **Remember that the present tense can be either continuous aspect or undefined aspect.**

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

- **Therefore, the present passive indicative can be translated in two ways:**
  - **Continuous aspect: I <u>am being hit</u> by the ball.**
  - **Undefined aspect: I <u>am hit</u> by the ball.**

Present Middle And Passive Have Same Form.
You Must Decide Based on Context.

- **In the present tense, the middle voice and passive voice are formed identically.**
  - **e.g., Just like τὸ πρόσωπον is neuter singular, but could be either nominative or accusative, λύεται is present indicative 3rd person singular, but could be either middle or passive.**
  - **My abbreviation for this parsing is PMpI3S, and then, based on context, I decide if it is middle or passive, and then underline the right one: PMpI3S or PMpI3S.**

- **Although when given no context you can parse something as middle/passive, when translating or exegeting, you will have to decide based on the context which voice it is.**
  - **If you know λύεται is passive, parse it as PPI3S (PMpI3S).**
  - **If you know λύεται is middle, parse it as PMI3S (PMpI3S).**

PMpI = Present tense stem + Connecting vowel + Primary middle personal endings

- **PMpI = Present tense stem + Connecting vowel + Primary middle personal endings**

- **Present tense stem: the same tense stem used in the PAI.**

- **Connective vowel: same as in the PAI.**

  - Same rule: omicron if the personal ending begins with mu or nu, and epsilon otherwise. If no personal ending, then it can be either omicron or epsilon.

  - Same result: ο, ε, ε, ο, ε, ο

- **Primary middle personal endings.**

  - I also call them the unaugmented middle personal endings because they are always used in the middle voice when there is no augment.

  - Memorize the primary middle personal endings.

PMpI Paradigm

- **Intervocalic sigma: A sigma between two vowels often drops out. The two vowels then often contract. This always (?) happens in PMpI2S, leaving η.**

Person & #	Present Tense Stem	Connect. Vowel	Primary Middle Personal Ending	PMpI Form	Meaning
1S	λυ	ο	μαι	λυ + ο + μαι ➜ λύομαι	I am loosed.
2S	λυ	ε	σαι	λυ + ε + σαι ➜ λυεσαι ➜ λυεαι ➜ λύῃ	You are loosed.
3S	λυ	ε	ται	λυ + ε + ται ➜ λύεται	He/She/It is loosed.
1P	λυ	ο	μεθα	λυ + ο + μεθα ➜ λυόμεθα	We are loosed.
2P	λυ	ε	σθε	λυ + ε + σθε ➜ λύεσθε	You are loosed.
3P	λυ	ο	νται	λυ + ο + νται ➜ λύονται	They are loosed.

Practice Inflecting λύω in the PMpI

Person & #	Present Tense Stem	Connect. Vowel	Primary Middle Personal Ending	PMpI Form	Meaning
1S			μαι		
2S			σαι		
3S			ται		
1P			μεθα		
2P			σθε		
3P			νται		

Deponent Verb: Middle or Passive in Form, But Active in Meaning

- **<u>Deponent verb</u>: A verb that is middle or passive in form, but always active in its meaning.**

- **The word "deponent" comes from "lay aside" - these verbs laid aside their middle or passive meaning.**

- **A deponent verb always has active meaning.**

- **A verb can be deponent in one tense, but not deponent in another tense. Usually the other tenses will be like the present tense, but not always. So if the other tenses aren't like the present tense, and if you need to know it, then you need to memorize it.**

- **If a verb is deponent in the tense that appears in the text, then note both the form and the fact that it is deponent (an underlined lower-case d) in the parsing.**

  - **E.g., PMp<u>d</u>I2S (present, middle-passive deponent, indicative, 2nd person singular) is middle-passive in form, but deponent (so it will actually be active in meaning).**

- **The lexical form will tell you if a verb is deponent in the present tense.**
    - **If the lexical form ends in omega, then the verb has the active ending, so you know it is active in form in the present tense, and hence you know that it is not deponent in the present tense.**
    - **But if the lexical form ends in μαι, then you know that the lexical form is the PMpI1S instead of the PAI1S, so you know that it is deponent in the present tense.**
    - **To know if it is deponent in a tense other than the present, look up the tense stems or "principle parts" (pp. 374-385 in Mounce *BBG*. Most lexicons list also them).**
    - **This is a simplification. Wallace's *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics* gives a more nuanced treatment of deponent verbs.**

Examples of Deponent Verbs

- The lexical form λύω ends in omega, so we know that it has an active form in the present tense. Therefore λύω is NOT a deponent verb in the present tense.

- The lexical form ἔρχομαι ends in μαι, so we know that it does not have an active form in the present tense. Therefore ἔρχομαι is a deponent verb in the present tense, and should be parsed PMpdI1S.

- The lexical form ἄρχω ends in omega, so ἄρχω is NOT a deponent verb in the present tense. But the future active form ἄρξω doesn't exist. Instead, to indicate active voice in the future, the middle voice form ἄρξομαι is used. So ἄρχω is not deponent in the present tense, but it is middle deponent in the future.

- The lexical form ἀναβαίνω ends in omega, so ἀναβαίνω is NOT a deponent verb in the present tense. But all of the forms in the aorist tense are passive (not active or middle) in form, so ἀναβαίνω is passive deponent in the aorist tense.

Meaning of Middle Voice

- **<u>Active meaning because deponent</u>**: About *75%* of middle forms are middle only because they are deponent, and hence they are active in meaning. E.g. ἔρχομαι.

- **<u>Self reference</u>**: The subject acts on or for himself or herself.
  - E.g., "Judas hanged himself" (Matthew 27:5).
  - Wallace lists subcategories of this.
  - Acting on oneself was the original meaning of the middle voice in classical Greek, but was rare by the NT period.

- **<u>Different definition</u>**: Some verbs have a different definition in the middle voice than in the active.
  - ἄρχω (PAI1S) means "I rule,"
  - but ἄρχομαι (PMI1S) means "I begin."

Contract Verbs Contract in the Present Middle/Passive

- The rules for contraction are always the same, so use the same rules as for the present active indicative in chapter 17.

- In the present middle and passive indicative, there is always (?) a circumflex accent over the contracted vowels except in the 1st person plural form, where it is an acute accent over the contracted vowels (because the contracted vowels are in the antepenult, and the antepenult can only take an acute accent).

- Omicron contract verbs in the PMpI2S contract omicron with η (eta with iota subscript) in the exception way, meaning that it breaks the rules and becomes οι instead of following the rules and becoming ῳ. This always (?) happens in the PMpI2S with omicron contract verbs.

- For alpha contracts and omicron contracts, PMpI2S and PAI3S are identical forms!

Examples of Contract Verbs in the PMpI

- **Remember the exception in PMpI2S for omicron contract verbs!**

	Connecting vowel and personal ending	*ἀγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1S	ομαι	ἀγαπα + ομαι ➜ ἀγαπῶμαι	ποιε + ομαι ➜ ποιοῦμαι	πληρο + ομαι ➜ πληροῦμαι
2S	εσαι ➜ εαι ➜ ῃ	ἀγαπα + ῃ ➜ ἀγαπᾷ	ποιε + ῃ ➜ ποιῇ	πληρο + ῃ ➜ πληροῖ
3S	εται	ἀγαπα + εται ➜ ἀγαπᾶται	ποιε + εται ➜ ποιεῖται	πληρο + εται ➜ πληροῦται
1P	ομεθα	ἀγαπα + ομεθα ➜ ἀγαπώμεθα	ποιε + ομεθα ➜ ποιούμεθα	πληρο + ομεθα ➜ πληρούμεθα
2P	εσθε	ἀγαπα + εσθε ➜ ἀγαπᾶσθε	ποιε + εσθε ➜ ποιεῖσθε	πληρο + εσθε ➜ πληροῦσθε
3P	ονται	ἀγαπα + ονται ➜ ἀγαπῶνται	ποιε + ονται ➜ ποιοῦνται	πληρο + ονται ➜ πληροῦνται

Practice Inflecting Contract Verbs in the PMpI

	Connecting vowel and personal ending	*ἀγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1S	ομαι	ἀγαπ	ποι	πληρ
2S	εσαι	ἀγαπ	ποι	πληρ
3S	εται	ἀγαπ	ποι	πληρ
1P	ομεθα	ἀγαπ	ποι	πληρ
2P	εσθε	ἀγαπ	ποι	πληρ
3P	ονται	ἀγαπ	ποι	πληρ

Ch.19

**Future Tense Is Future Time,
Undefined (or sometimes Continuous?) Aspect**

- **Future Time:** The event is future from the viewpoint of the speaker, not necessarily future from the viewpoint of the reader. (e.g. in Matthew 24:2 Jesus used a future tense to speak of the destruction of the temple, which occurred in A.D. 70).

  – The future tense emphasizes the time. It is always future time.

- **Aspect:** Mounce states that "as a general rule, translate the future with the undefined aspect ("I will eat") rather than the continuous ("I will be eating"). Black states that the aspect can be either continuous or aoristic. Wallace argues that it is only aoristic.

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

Future is the Present with a Different Tense Stem and a Sigma before the Connecting Vowel

- **FAI** = Future active tense stem + Tense formative (σ or εσ) + Connecting vowel + Primary active personal endings

- **FMI** = Future active tense stem + Tense formative (σ or εσ) + Connecting vowel + Primary middle personal endings

- The future passive will be treated in chapter 24 because it uses a different tense stem.

*Root → Present Tense Stem, Future Active Tense Stem
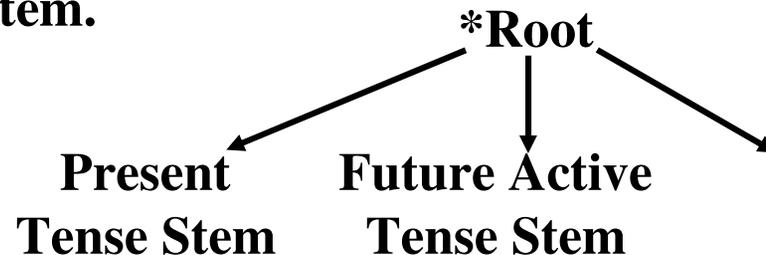
- <u>Future active tense stem</u>:
  - often the same as the present tense stem, but not always.
- <u>Tense formative</u>: (σ) for most verbs
  - (εσ) for "liquid verbs" (chapter 20).
- <u>Connecting vowel</u>: The same as the PAI.

Future Uses the Same Personal Endings as the Present

- **FAI uses the same personal endings as the PAI**
  - **Primary active personal endings**
- **FMI uses the same personal endings as the PMpI**
  - **Primary middle personal endings**

- **The way to remember that the future uses the "primary" endings is that they are the "unaugmented" personal endings, and there is no augment in the future.**

- **Since the connecting vowels and personal endings are the same as the PAI and PMpI, they will contract in the same way, giving the same endings that are seen in the PAI and PMpI.**

Inflection of Future Active Indicative (FAI)

PN	Future Tense Stem	Tense Form ative	CV	Primary Active Personal Ending	FAI Form	Meaning
1S	λυ	σ	ο	–	λυ + σ + ο + – ➜ λυσο ➜ λύσω	I will loose.
2S	λυ	σ	ε	ις	λυ + σ + ε + ις ➜ λύσεις	You will loose.
3S	λυ	σ	ε	ι	λυ + σ + ε + ι ➜ λύσει	He/She/It will loose.
1P	λυ	σ	ο	μεν	λυ + σ + ο + μεν ➜ λύσομεν	We will loose.
2P	λυ	σ	ε	τε	λυ + σ + ε + τε ➜ λύσετε	You will loose.
3P	λυ	σ	ο	νσι(ν)	λυ + σ + ο + νσι(ν) ➜ λυσονσι(ν) ➜ λύσουσι(ν)	They will loose.

Practice Inflecting ἀκούω in the FAI

- **What is the root?**

PN	Future Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Primary Active Personal Ending	FAI Form
1S				–	
2S				ις	
3S				ι	
1P				μεν	
2P				τε	
3P				νσι(ν)	

Inflection of Future Middle Indicative (FMI)

PN	Future Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Primary Middle Personal Ending	FMI Form	Meaning
1S	λυ	σ	ο	μαι	λυ + σ + ο + μαι ➜ λύσομαι	I will loose for myself.
2S	λυ	σ	ε	σαι	λυ + σ + ε + σαι ➜ λυσεσαι ➜ λυσεαι ➜ λύσῃ	You will loose for yourself.
3S	λυ	σ	ε	ται	λυ + σ + ε + ται ➜ λύσεται	He/She/It will loose for himself/herself/itself
1P	λυ	σ	ο	μεθα	λυ + σ + ο + μεθα ➜ λυσόμεθα	We will loose for ourselves.
2P	λυ	σ	ε	σθε	λυ + σ + ε + σθε ➜ λύσεσθε	You will loose for yourselves.
3P	λυ	σ	ο	νται	λυ + σ + ο + νται ➜ λύσονται	They will loose for themselves.

- **What is the root?**

PN	Future Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Primary Middle Personal Ending	FMI Form
1S				μαι	
2S				σαι	
3S				ται	
1P				μεθα	
2P				σθε	
3P				νται	

- **Contract vowels do not contract in the FAI and FMI because they contract when they encounter the connecting vowel, but in the future, the contract vowels are separated from the connecting vowel by the tense formative.**

- **Since they can't contract, but they want to do something =),
  contract vowels "lengthen" before a tense formative.**
  - α ➔ η   **e.g.** *ἀγαπα + σ + ω = ἀγαπήσω
  - ϵ ➔ η   **e.g.** *ποιϵ + σ + ω = ποιήσω
  - ο ➔ ω   **e.g.** *πληρο + σ + ω = πληρώσω
  - **Note that alpha lengthens to eta instead of to long alpha. It does this because lengthening to long alpha would be invisible. This same lengthening of alpha will be seen in the augment in chapter 21.**

- **Accent is always over the lengthened contract vowel in the FAI.**

Future Tense Stems that End in a "Stop"
Use the Square of Stops With Tense Formative Sigma

- **If the future active tense stem ends in a stop, then the future tense formative sigma will combine with the stop at the end of the future active tense stem according to the square of stops. This is the same behavior that we saw in 3rd declension nouns.**

- **3rd declension noun example: *σαρκ + σ ➔ σάρξ**

- **FAI1S verb example: *βλεπ + σ + ο + – ➔ βλέπσω ➔ βλέψω**

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate	+ σ =
Labial	π	β	φ	ψ
Velar	κ	γ	χ	ξ
Dental	τ	δ	θ	σ

Future Indicative of ϵἰμί is Irregular

- **Future indicative of ϵἰμί is irregular, so you need to memorize it.**
- **Grammarians debate over whether or not ϵἰμί has a voice.**
  - **My opinion is that it lacks voice.**
  - **I label it PXI and FXI, where the X refers to the absence of voice.**

p#	PXI	PXI Meaning	FXI	FXI Meaning
1s	ϵἰμί	I am.	ἔσομαι	I will be.
2s	ϵἶ	You are.	ἔσῃ	You will be.
3s	ἐστί(ν)	He/she/it is.	ἔσται	He/she/it will be.
1p	ἐσμέν	We are.	ἐσόμεθα	We will be.
2p	ἐστέ	You are.	ἔσεσθϵ	You will be.
3p	ϵἰσί(ν)	They are.	ἔσονται	They will be.

Mounce Miscellany

- **Root of noun βασιλεύς is *βασιλεϝ. Several words have roots ending in εϝ. They are masculine, and 3rd declension because of the ϝ. (ϝ is the letter digamma. See chapter 10 on 3rd declension nouns if you need a refresher). The ϝ at the end of a verb stem drops out before a vowel, and becomes υ before a consonant.**

- **The verb προσκυνέω takes a direct object in either the accusative or the dative.**

  - **This is important to know when sentence diagramming (2nd and 3rd year Greek!).**

- **The verb καλέω is a contract verb because the present tense stem ends in epsilon. But, it does not lengthen the epsilon before a tense formative. Mounce states that this is because the root ends (or used to end) with a digamma, so you can consider the other tense stems to end with a digamma rather than an epsilon, and hence to not be a contract verb except in the present and imperfect tenses, which use the present tense stem.**

- **The root is the most basic form of a verb.**
  - **Roots are always prefaced with an asterisk (*) in Mounce.**
  - **Roots are theoretical entities that are never seen in a text.**
- **All 6 tense stems ("principle parts") are derived from the root.**

Root (*)

Present Tense Stem   **Future Active Tense Stem**   **Aorist Active Tense Stem**
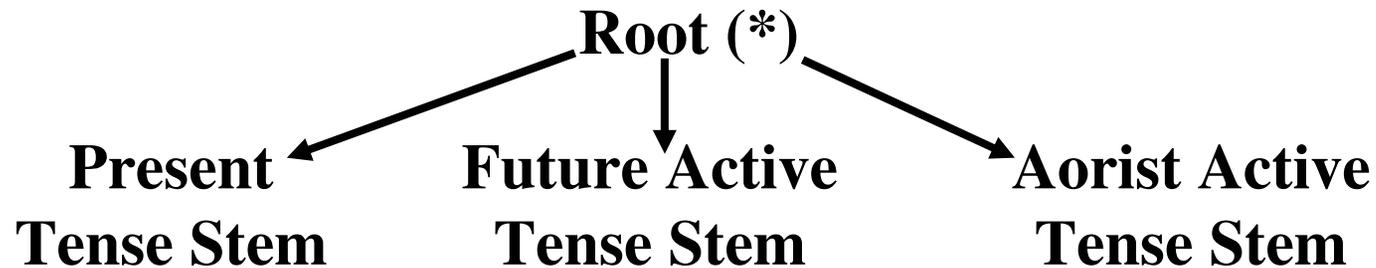
- **There are 9 verbs that occur in the NT that use two or three different roots, where different tense stems are formed from different roots.**
  - **e.g. ἔρχομαι: The present tense stem (and hence the PAI1S ἔρχομαι) is from the root *ἐρχ. The future active tense stem (and hence the FAI1S ἐλεύσομαι) is from the root *ἐλευθ.**
  - **e.g. λέγω: The present tense stem (and hence the PAI1S λέγω) is from the root *λεγ. The future active tense stem (and hence the FAI1S ἐρῶ) is from the root *ἐρ.**

Tense Stem

- **Tense stem** = Basic form of a verb in a particular tense and voice

- **6 tense stems**: present, future active, aorist active, perfect active, perfect middle/passive, and aorist passive.
  - The present stem is used for the active and middle/passive forms.
  - The future active is used for the active and middle forms.
  - The aorist active is used for the active and middle forms.
  - The aorist passive is also used for the future passive.
- **6 "principle parts"** are listed in many reference books as a way to show the tense stems.
  - PAI
  - FAI
  - AAI (aorist active indicative)
  - TAI (perfect active indicative)
  - TMpI (perfect middle/passive indicative)
  - API (aorist passive indicative)

- **Many tense stems are the same as the root**
  - **but not all of them for every verb.**

- **The present tense stem is the tense stem *least likely* to be the same as the root.**
  - **Mounce categorizes verbs into 8 categories according to how the present tense stem is formed from the verbal root.**

- **If you cannot recognize that one of the principle parts came from the root and what tense it is, then either memorize the tense stem or memorize the root.**
  - **Usually you can memorize the root instead of memorizing the tense stems because knowing the root will allow you to figure out most of the tense stems, and hence be able to parse the verb most of the time.**
  - **Often all of the tense stems except for the present are the same as the root, so all you need to memorize is the lexical form (i.e. the present tense) and the root.**

Mounce's 8 Categories of How to Form
Present Tense Stem from the Root

- **(1) Present tense stem = root**
- **(2) Present tense stem = root + consonantal iota**
  - **The consonantal iota drops out or combines with nearby letters, causing the present tense stem to differ from the root.**
- **(3) Present tense stem = root + Nu**
- **(4) Present tense stem = root + Tau**
- **(5) Present tense stem = root + (ι)σκ.**
  - **Often with other changes too.** ☹
- **(6) μι verbs (chapters 34 and 35)**
- **(7) Present tense stem = root after ablaut (changed stem vowel)**
- **(8) Verb that uses multiple roots to form different tense stems.**

Examples of Verbs Where
Present Tense Stem = Root + Consonantal Iota

- **Vowel + Delta + Consonantal Iota = Vowel + Zeta**
  - **Applies only if delta was preceded by a vowel.**
  - **E.g., Root *βαπτιδ**
  - **Present tense stem is βαπτιζ (from *βαπτιδ + ι̯)**
    - **So PAI1S is βαπτίζω (from βαπτιζ + ο + –)**
  - **Future tense stem is βαπτιδ (the same as the root)**
    - **So FAI1S is βαπτίσω (from βαπτιδ + σ + ο + –)**

- **Velar (Kappa, Gamma, Chi) + consonantal iota = double Sigma.**
  - **E.g., Root *ταραχ**
  - **Present tense stem is ταράσσ (from *ταραχ + ι̯)**
    - **So PAI1S is ταράσσω (from ταρασσ + ο + –)**
  - **Future tense stem is ταραχ (the same as the root)**
    - **So FAI1S is ταράξω (from ταραχ + σ + ο + –)**

- **So these tense stems are formed from the root in a regular manner.**
  - **But if you memorize the lexical form and the root, you can parse them without memorizing these rules.**
- **Many verbs fall into these categories.**

Verbs with a Liquid Future

- **<u>Liquid verb</u>**: the last letter of a tense stem is a <u>liquid</u> (λ, μ, ν, or ρ).
- **<u>Liquid future</u>**: Verbs that are liquid in the *future tense stem* form their FAI and FMI differently than other verbs.
  - The tense formative for the FAI and FMI of a liquid verb is (εσ) rather than (σ).
  - The sigma of the tense formative drops out, and the epsilon of the tense formative contracts with the connecting vowel.
  - So for practical purposes you can always (?) think of the tense formative as being epsilon rather than epsilon sigma.
- Therefore, the FAI and FMI of a verb with a future tense stem that is liquid look like the PAI and PMpI of an epsilon contract verb, including the accent on the contracted vowels.
- The accent is critical, because it is often the only thing that distinguishes the future from the present of a liquid verb.

Liquid Future like Present Epsilon Contract.
Accent Distinguishes Future from Present of Liquid Verb.

p#	PAI of liquid future verb *μεν	FAI of liquid future verb *μεν	PAI of epsilon contract verb *ποιε
1s	μένω	μενῶ	ποιῶ
2s	μένεις	μενεῖς	ποιεῖς
3s	μένει	μενεῖ	ποιεῖ
1p	μένομεν	μενοῦμεν	ποιοῦμεν
2p	μένετε	μενεῖτε	ποιεῖτε
3p	μένουσι(ν)	μενοῦσι(ν)	ποιοῦσι(ν)

p#	PMpI of liquid future verb *μεν	FMI of liquid future verb *μεν	PMpI of epsilon contract verb *ποιε
1s	μένομαι	μενοῦμαι	ποιοῦμαι
2s	μένῃ	μενῇ	ποιῇ
3s	μένεται	μενεῖται	ποιεῖται
1p	μενόμεθα	μενούμεθα	ποιούμεθα
2p	μένεσθε	μενεῖσθε	ποιεῖσθε
3p	μένονται	μενοῦνται	ποιοῦνται

Practice Inflecting
Liquid Future Verbs in the Active Voice

p#	PAI of liquid future verb *μεν	FAI of liquid future verb *μεν	PAI of epsilon contract verb *ποιε
1s			
2s			
3s			
1p			
2p			
3p			

Practice Inflecting
Liquid Future Verbs in the Middle Voice

p#	PMpI of liquid future verb *μεν	FMI of liquid future verb *μεν	PMpI of epsilon contract verb *ποιε
1s			
2s			
3s			
1p			
2p			
3p			

Compound Verb = Preposition + Verb

- **Compound verb:**
  - **a verb made of a preposition + a verb.**
  - **e.g. ἐκβάλλω = ἐκ + βάλλω.**

- **Compound verbs generally decline in the same way as their underlying root.**
  - **e.g. future of βάλλω is βαλῶ, so the future of ἐκβάλλω is ἐκβαλῶ.**

- **I separate the preposition from the root when listing the root.**
  - **e.g. Root of ἐκβάλλω is ἐκ + *βαλ**
  - **Mounce sometimes separates them (ἐκβάλλω on p. 174)
    and sometimes combines them (ἐπερωτάω on p. 186).**

Imperfect Tense is Past Time, Continuous Aspect

	PAST TIME	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME
CONTINUOUS ASPECT	**Imperfect** ("I was saying")	**Present** ("I am saying")	**Future?** ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ASPECT	**Aorist** ("I said")	**Present** ("I say")	**Future** ("I will say")
PERFECT ASPECT	**Pluperfect** ("I had said")	**Perfect** ("I have said")	**Future Perfect** ("I will have said")

- **Imperfect is <u>past</u> time, <u>continuous</u> aspect.**

- **Same aspect, different time than present tense.**

- **Same time, different aspect than aorist and pluperfect tenses.**

- **This is a simplification.**
  - **Wallace lists nine uses of the imperfect tense.**
  - **Take 2nd year Greek next year!**

Questions on Tense, Time, and Aspect

	? TIME	? TIME	? TIME
? ASPECT			
? ASPECT			
? ASPECT			

➢ **Fill in the table above.**

➢ **What tenses go in two slots?**

➢ **How many past tenses does Greek have?**

➢ **Give examples of all tenses using "Jesus" and "rises."**

Imperfect Indicative Formed With Present Tense Stem

- IAI = Augment + Present tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings

- IMpI = Augment + Present tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings

- <u>Present tense stem</u>

  - The IAI and IMpI are formed with the present tense stem

    - The same stem as the PAI and PMpI.

    - Therefore, if a verb is deponent in the present tense, it is also deponent in the imperfect.

- <u>Connecting vowel:</u>

  - Always ο, ε, ε, ο, ε, ο in the indicative mood.

  - Imperfect indicative uses same connecting vowels as the present and future!

  - Connecting vowels used in indicative mood unless perfect, pluperfect, or tense formative ends in a vowel.

- ➢ What distinguishes the imperfect tense from the present tense?

Augment Indicates Past Time

- **Augment indicates past absolute time.**
  - **Absolute time only occurs in the indicative mood.**
    - **Other moods are timeless or have relative time.**
  - **Therefore augment only indicative mood.**
  - **Therefore augment only imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect.**
    - **Pluperfect doesn't always augment.**
      - **Pluperfect already has something happening at the front of the word (reduplication because of perfect aspect), so it often thinks it has worked hard enough and skips the augment.**

- ➢ **Does the future tense augment? Why?**
- ➢ **Does the aorist tense augment? Why?**
- ➢ **What tense sometimes breaks the augment rule and why?**

Augment is a Prefix
(Augment Effects Front End of Verb)

- **Formation of augment:**
  - **If word begins with a consonant, the augment is an epsilon.**
    - **e.g. λύω ➤ ἔλυον**
  - **If a word begins with a single vowel,
    then the vowel lengthens to the corresponding long vowel**
    - **except that alpha lengthens to eta instead of to long alpha.**
      - **This allows the augment to be visible.**
  - **Thus augment is invisible
    if the word begins with eta, iota, upsilon, or omega.**

Short	Long
alpha (α) 'f**a**ther'	alpha (α) 'f**a**ther'
epsilon (ε) 'm**e**t'	eta (η) 'ob**ey**'
iota (ι) 'h**i**t'	iota (ι) 'h**i**t'
upsilon (υ) '**u**nit'	upsilon (υ) '**u**nit'
omicron (o) 'n**o**t'	omega (ω) 't**o**ne'

Augment First Letter of Diphthong.
Augment Verb, not Preposition, in Compound Verbs.

- **If a word begins with a diphthong,**
  - **then either the first letter of the diphthong lengthens** (εὐχαριστέω ➔ ηὐχαριστουν),
  - **or else the diphthong is not changed at all** (εὑρίσκω ➔ εὕρισκον).
    - **Often verbs beginning with** ευ **don't change.**

- **Compound verbs augment the verb part, not the preposition part.**
  - **If the preposition ends with a vowel, the ending vowel never contracts.**
  - **The ending vowel of the preposition usually drops out** (**e.g.** καταβαίνω ➔ κατεβαίνον).
  - **For some verbs, the ending vowel stays but doesn't contract** (**e.g.** περιπατέω ➔ περιεπάτουν).
  - **When verbs with the preposition** ἐκ **augment, the kappa turns into xsi.** (**e.g.** ἐκβάλλω ➔ ἐξέβαλλον).

Secondary Personal Endings
Used If and Only If Past Time

- **Secondary personal endings are used whenever there is past time (and therefore an augment).**
  - **Therefore, used only in the indicative mood.**
    - **[Actually, they are also used for all tenses in the optative mood, but that is chapter 35!]**
  - **Therefore, used only in the imperfect, aorist, and pluperfect tenses.**
    - **[The pluperfect doesn't always augment, but it always uses the secondary endings because it is always past time.]**
- **This is handy, because if you recognize a secondary personal ending, you can know that the verb is indicative mood, and either the aorist, imperfect, or pluperfect tense, even if the augment is invisible.**

Memorize the Chart of Connecting Vowels And Personal Endings.

p#	indicative and imperative mood connecting vowel	Primary Active	Secondary Active	Primary Middle	Secondary Middle
1s	ο	-	ν	μαι	μην
2s	ε	ς	ς	σαι	σο
3s	ε	ι	-(ν)	ται	το
1p	ο	μεν	μεν	μεθα	μεθα
2p	ε	τε	τε	σθε	σθε
3p	ο	νσι(ν)	ν	νται	ντο

- **1S and 3P in the augmented active have the same connecting vowel and personal ending. Only context will tell you which it is.**

- **The initial sigma of the 2nd person singular augmented middle personal ending (σο) will drop out, and the connecting vowel epsilon will contract with the omicron of the personal ending, producing ου, following the rules from chapter 17.**

Questions on Forming the Imperfect

➢ **When is augment used, and why?**

➢ **When are secondary personal endings used, and why?**

➢ **Look at the endings for the imperfect active.**
   Is the 3ʳᵈ singular ever ambiguous with another imperfect? Why?

➢ **Does the imperfect indicative use a connecting vowel? Why?**

➢ **What connecting vowels are used in the imperfect indicative?**

➢ **What distinguishes the form of the imperfect from the present?**

➢ **What distinguishes the meaning of the imperfect from the present?**

➢ **Augment the following words and explain the rule:**

  ➢ λύω

  ➢ καταλύω

  ➢ ἐκλύω

  ➢ ἀγαπάω

  ➢ ἔρχομαι

  ➢ εὑρίσκω

Example Inflection:
IAI and IMpI of λύω

- **IAI = Augment + Present tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings**

- **IMpI = Augment + Present tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings**

p#	indicative and imperative mood connecting vowel	Secondary Active	IAI of λύω	Secondary Middle	IMpI of λύω
1s	ο	ν	ἔλυον	μην	ἐλυόμην
2s	ε	ς	ἔλυες	σο	ἐλύου
3s	ε	-(ν)	ἔλυε(ν)	το	ἐλύετο
1p	ο	μεν	ἐλύομεν	μεθα	ἐλυόμεθα
2p	ε	τε	ἐλύετε	σθε	ἐλύεσθε
3p	ο	ν	ἔλυον	ντο	ἐλύοντο

Practice Inflecting λύω in the Imperfect

p#	indicative and imperative mood connecting vowel	Secondary Active	IAI of λύω	Secondary Middle	IMpI of λύω
1s		ν		μην	
2s		ς		σο	
3s		-(ν)		το	
1p		μεν		μεθα	
2p		τε		σθε	
3p		ν		ντο	

Contract Verbs Contract
in the Present and Imperfect Tenses

- **Contract verbs contract in the imperfect, following the rules that you learned in chapter 17, except for the accent rule.**
  - **You should already know everything you need to know in order to inflect them.**

- **Remember that contract verbs contract always and only in the present and imperfect tenses.**
  - **The reason for this is that everywhere else there is either a tense formative separating the contract vowel from the connecting vowel, or else there is no connecting vowel (TMp).**
  - **[If the aorist active tense stem of a second aorist verb ended with a contract vowel, by this rule we would expect contract vowels to also contract in the second aorist active and middle voices. But apparently there are no contract second aorist tense stems, so this never occurs.]**

Ch.21

Inflecting Contract Verbs in the IAI and IMpI

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	*ἀγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1s	ο	ν	ον	ἠγάπων	ἐποίουν	ἐπλήρουν
2s	ε	ς	ες	ἠγάπας	ἐποίεις	ἐπλήρους
3s	ε	-(ν)	ε(ν)	ἠγάπα(ν)	ἐποίει(ν)	ἐπλήρου(ν)
1p	ο	μεν	ομεν	ἠγαπῶμεν	ἐποιοῦμεν	ἐπληροῦμεν
2p	ε	τε	ετε	ἠγαπᾶτε	ἐποιεῖτε	ἐπληροῦτε
3p	ο	ν	ον	ἠγάπων	ἐποίουν	ἐπλήρουν

Spurious diphthong here, so drop the upsilon when contracting with contract vowel.

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	*ἀγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1s	ο	μην	ομην	ἠγαπώμην	ἐποιούμην	ἐπληρούμην
2s	ε	σο	ου	ἠγαπῶ	ἐποιοῦ	ἐπληροῦ
3s	ε	το	ετο	ἠγαπᾶτο	ἐποιεῖτο	ἐπληροῦτο
1p	ο	μεθα	ομεθα	ἠγαπώμεθα	ἐποιούμεθα	ἐπληρούμεθα
2p	ε	σθε	εσθε	ἠγαπᾶσθε	ἐποιεῖσθε	ἐπληροῦσθε
3p	ο	ντο	οντο	ἠγαπῶντο	ἐποιοῦντο	ἐπληροῦντο

J.C. Beckman 2003.09.17   *1st Year Greek Overheads*   *Slide 247 of 628*

Practice Inflecting Contract Verbs in the IAI

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	*ἀγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1s		ν				
2s		ς				
3s		-(ν)				
1p		μεν				
2p		τε				
3p		ν				

Practice Inflecting Contract Verbs in the IMpI

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	*ἀγαπα	*ποιε	*πληρο
1s		μην				
2s		σο				
3s		το				
1p		μεθα				
2p		σθε				
3p		ντο				

Imperfect of εἰμί

- εἰμί – **Memorize the imperfect indicative (no voice, as indicated by "X" below).**

- **The IXI2S and IXI1P of** εἰμί **have a second, rarer form, shown below, which need not be memorized.**

p#	PXI	IXI	FXI
1s	εἰμί	ἤμην	ἔσομαι
2s	εἶ	ἦς , ἦσθα	ἔσῃ
3s	ἐστί(ν)	ἦν	ἔσται
1p	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν , ἦμεθα	ἐσόμεθα
2p	ἐστέ	ἦτε	ἔσεσθε
3p	εἰσί(ν)	ἦσαν	ἔσονται

Aorist Tense is Past Time, Undefined Aspect

- The aorist tense is past time, undefined aspect.

- There are two other tenses for past time, for the other aspects.
  - The imperfect tense is past time, continuous aspect.
  - The pluperfect tense is past time, perfect aspect.

- Normally translate the aorist tense with the simple form of the English past tense: "I studied."

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

There are Two Ways to Form the Aorist Tense

- There are two ways to form the past tense in English.
  - Some English verbs add "ed" to the end.
    - For example, study ➔ studied.
  - Other English verbs change the vowel.
    - For example run ➔ ran.
- There are two ways to form the aorist tense in Greek.
  - Some Greek verbs use a tense formative.
    - Like study ➔ studied.
    - For example, λύω ➔ ἔλυσα.
    - This is called a <u>first aorist</u>, and is covered in chapter 23.
  - Other Greek verbs don't use a tense formative, but you can distinguish them from the imperfect because the aorist active tense stem is different than the present tense stem.
    - Like run ➔ ran.
    - For example, λαμβάνω ➔ ἔλαβον.
    - This is called a <u>second aorist</u>, and is covered in this chapter.

The Second Aorist Does Not Use a Tense Formative

- **2nd AAI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings**

- **2nd AMI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings**

- **API will be covered in chapter 24 because it uses a different tense stem.**

- **Note that the only difference between the active and middle voice is the personal endings.**

- **Note that the secondary personal endings are used.**
  - **This is because the aorist indicative is augmented, just like the imperfect tense.**

Aorist Active Tense Stem
and Present Tense Stem Always Differ for 2nd Aorist

- **Note that the only difference between the formation of the second aorist and the imperfect is the tense stem that is used.**

- **For verbs that spell their aorist in the "second aorist" way, the aorist active tense stem is always different than the present tense stem.**
  - **Otherwise, there would be no way to distinguish between the imperfect and the aorist tenses.**
  - **For second aorists, usually the aorist active tense stem is the root, and the present tense stem is NOT the root.**

- **This demonstrates why if the present tense stem is not the root you should memorize the root: If you know the root, you can often recognize the other tense stems.**
  - **In other words, always know the root of a verb.**
    - **Either know it automatically because you can figure it out from the lexical form (and thus from the present tense stem), or else memorize it if you can't figure out the root from the lexical form.**

Everything Except the Tense Stem
Is the Same in the 2nd Aorist as the Imperfect

- 2nd AAI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem
  + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings

- 2nd AMI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem
  + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings

- Augment is the same as we learned for the imperfect tense.

- Connecting vowel is the same as we learned for the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

  – A very few second aorists are sometimes spelled with an alpha as the connecting vowel (chapter 23, section 23.11)

- Secondary personal endings are the same as we learned for the imperfect tense.

λαμβάνω (*λαβ), meaning "I take,"
Uses a 2nd Aorist ("I took")

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	AAI	IAI	PAI
1s	ο	ν	ον	ἔλαβον	ἐλάμβανον	λαμβάνω
2s	ε	ς	ες	ἔλαβες	ἐλάμβανες	λαμβάνεις
3s	ε	-(ν)	ε(ν)	ἔλαβε(ν)	ἐλάμβανε(ν)	λαμβάνει
1p	ο	μεν	ομεν	ἐλάβομεν	ἐλαμβάνομεν	λαμβάνομεν
2p	ε	τε	ετε	ἐλάβετε	ἐλαμβάνετε	λαμβάνετε
3p	ο	ν	ον	ἔλαβον	ἐλάμβανον	λαμβάνουσι(ν)

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	AMI	IMpI	PMpI
1s	ο	μην	ομην	ἐλαβόμην	ἐλαμβάνομην	λαμβάνομαι
2s	ε	σο	ου	ἐλάβου	ἐλαμβάνου	λαμβάνῃ
3s	ε	το	ετο	ἐλάβετο	ἐλαμβάνετο	λαμβάνεται
1p	ο	μεθα	ομεθα	ἐλαβόμεθα	ἐλαμβανόμεθα	λαμβανόμεθα
2p	ε	σθε	εσθε	ἐλάβεσθε	ἐλαμβάνεσθε	λαμβάνεσθε
3p	ο	ντο	οντο	ἐλάβοντο	ἐλαμβάνοντο	λαμβάνονται

λαμβάνω (*λαβ), meaning "I take,"
Uses a 2nd Aorist ("I took")

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	AAI	IAI	PAI
1s						
2s						
3s						
1p						
2p						
3p						

p#	CV	PE	CV + PE	AMI	IMpI	PMpI
1s						
2s						
3s						
1p						
2p						
3p						

- **The verb γίνομαι means things like "I am" or "I come into being."**
  - γίνομαι **takes a predicate nominative rather than a direct object.**
  - **To remember this, notice that γίνομαι has a similar meaning to ἐιμί, so it can be expected to act grammatically as ἐιμί does: they are both copulative verbs.**

- **In English, sentences with a compound subject always take a plural verb.**
  - **Joe walks.**
  - **Joe and Jane walk.**
- **In Greek, sentences with a compound subject take a plural or a singular verb depending on whatever subject is closest in word order to the verb.**
  - **Joe walks.**
  - **Joe and Jane *walks*. (Singular verb because Jane is singular.)**
  - **The boys and the girl *walks*. (Singular verb because "girl" is singular.)**
  - **The girl and the boys *walk*. (Plural verb because "boys" is plural.)**

There are Two Ways to Form the Aorist Tense, But they Mean the Same.

- 1ˢᵗ AAI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Tense formative (σα) + Secondary active personal endings

- 2ⁿᵈ AAI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings

- 1ˢᵗ AMI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Tense formative (σα) + Secondary middle personal endings

- 2ⁿᵈ AMI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings

- 1ˢᵗ aorist and 2ⁿᵈ aorist are two different ways to form the aorist tense.

- Some verbs form their aorist one way (kick ➜ kicked), some verbs do it the other way (sit ➜ sat).

- The meaning is the same regardless of which way the aorist is formed.

- A very few verbs form the aorist one way sometimes, and the other way at other times.

1st Aorist Uses a Tense Formative.
2nd Aorist Uses a Connecting Vowel.

- 1ˢᵗ AAI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Tense formative (σα) + Secondary active personal endings

- 2ⁿᵈ AAI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings

- 1ˢᵗ AMI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Tense formative (σα) + Secondary middle personal endings

- 2ⁿᵈ AMI = Augment + Aorist active tense stem + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings

- 1ˢᵗ aorist uses a tense formative but no connecting vowel.
  – The tense formative ends with a vowel, so there is no need to add a vowel after it to help with pronunciation.

- 2ⁿᵈ aorist uses a connecting vowel but no tense formative.
  – Since it lacks a tense formative that ends with a vowel, it needs a vowel to help with pronunciation.

Aorist Active and Aorist Middle
Always Use the Aorist Active Tense Stem

- **1ˢᵗ AAI = Augment + <u>Aorist active tense stem</u> + Tense formative (σα) + Secondary active personal endings**
- **2ⁿᵈ AAI = Augment + <u>Aorist active tense stem</u> + Connecting vowel + Secondary active personal endings**

- **1ˢᵗ AMI = Augment + <u>Aorist active tense stem</u> + Tense formative (σα) + Secondary middle personal endings**
- **2ⁿᵈ AMI = Augment + <u>Aorist active tense stem</u> + Connecting vowel + Secondary middle personal endings**

- **It doesn't matter whether the verb forms its aorist as a second aorist or as a first aorist, AAI and AMI always use the aorist active tense stem.**
- **If Aorist active tense stem = Present tense stem ➔ Always 1ˢᵗ aorist.**
  - **Need a tense formative to distinguish aorist from imperfect.**
- **If Aorist active tense stem ≠ Present tense stem ➔ Usually 2ⁿᵈ aorist.**
  - **Don't need a tense formative to distinguish aorist from imperfect.**

1st Aorist Tense Formative is σα,
Except for Liquids and AAI3S

- **The first aorist tense formative is σα in both the active and middle voices, with two exceptions:**
  - **1) AAI3S tense formative is (σε)**
    - **The reason it is σε is to distinguish it from the 1ˢᵗ singular (if the movable nu doesn't show up) and 3ʳᵈ plural (if the movable nu does show up).**

  - **2) Liquid aorists use the tense formative (α) for active & middle voice**
    - **If the aorist active tense stem ends in a liquid (λ μ ν ρ)**
    - **and the verb has a first aorist,**
    - **then first aorist tense formative is (α) instead of (σα).**
    - **Just like non-liquid aorists, the alpha in the tense formative changes to epsilon in the 3rd singular.**
    - **Liquids only effect the aorist and future tenses, because only those tenses have a tense formative that begins with sigma.**

- **<u>Contract verbs</u>:**
  - – Contract vowels always length before a tense formative.
  - – So if the aorist active tense stem ends with a contract vowel,
  - – and if the verb has a first aorist (which has a tense formative)
  - – then the contract vowel lengthens in the aorist,
    just like in the future tense.
  - – e.g. (PAI1S) ἀγαπάω ➜ (AAI1S) ἀγαπα + σα ➜ ἠγάπασα ➜ ἠγάπησα

- **<u>Stems ending with a stop</u>** have the stop combine with the sigma of the tense formative according to the table of stops, just as happened with the future tense.
  - – e.g. (PAI1S) βλέπω ➜ (AAI1S) ἐβλεπ + σα ➜ ἐβλέπσα ➜ ἐβλέψα

Aorist Uses Secondary Personal Endings
Except for AAI1S of 1st Aorist

- Secondary personal endings:
  - The secondary personal endings are used for absolute past time (augmented tenses).
  - Therefore all aorists in the indicative mood (where time is absolute) use the secondary personal endings.
  - So the aorist and middle use the same endings.

- One exception:
  - For 1st aorists, the AAI1S personal ending is blank (—).
    - This allows the 1st singular and 3rd plural to be distinguished in 1st aorists, unlike in 2nd aorists and the imperfect.
  - Everywhere else, the secondary active personal ending, first person singular is nu (ν).
    - This applies to the 2nd aorist AAI1S, the IAI1S, and the pluperfect.
    - Using nu makes the 1st singular and 3rd plural indistinguishable in the 2nd aorist and the imperfect.

Forming the 1st Aorist of λύω:
Augment + AATS + TF (σα) + PE

Note (σε) not (σα) **Note lack of (ν)**

p#	TF	PE	AAI	Meaning	IAI	PAI
1s	σα	–	ἔλυσα	I loosed	ἔλυον	λύω
2s	σα	ς	ἔλυσας	You loosed	ἔλυες	λύεις
3s	σε	-(ν)	ἔλυσε(ν)	He/She/It loosed	ἔλυε(ν)	λύει
1p	σα	μεν	ἐλύσαμεν	We loosed	ἐλύομεν	λύομεν
2p	σα	τε	ἐλύσατε	You loosed	ἐλύετε	λύετε
3p	σα	ν	ἔλυσαν	They loosed	ἔλυον	λύουσι(ν)

p#	TF	PE	AMI	Meaning	IMpI	PMpI
1s	σα	μην	ἐλυσάμην	I loosed for myself	ἐλυόμην	λύομαι
2s	σα	σο	ἐλύσω	You loosed for yourself	ἐλύου	λύῃ
3s	σα	το	ἐλύσατο	He/She/It loosed for *self	ἐλύετο	λύεται
1p	σα	μεθα	ἐλυσάμεθα	We loosed for ourselves	ἐλυόμεθα	λυόμεθα
2p	σα	σθε	ἐλύσασθε	You loosed for yourselves	ἐλύεσθε	λύεσθε
3p	σα	ντο	ἐλύσαντο	They loosed for themselves	ἐλύοντο	λύονται

Form the 1st Aorist of λύω

p#	TF	PE	AAI	Meaning	IAI	PAI
1s						
2s						
3s						
1p						
2p						
3p						

p#	TF	PE	AMI	Meaning	IMpI	PMpI
1s						
2s						
3s						
1p						
2p						
3p						

Forming the Liquid 1st Aorist of μένω:
Augment + AATS + TF (α) + PE

Note (ε) not (α)   **Note lack of (ν)**

p#	TF	PE	AAI	Meaning	IAI	PAI
1s	α	–	ἔμεινα	I remained	ἔμενον	μένω
2s	α	ς	ἔμεινας	You remained	ἔμενες	λένεις
3s	ε	-(ν)	ἔμεινε(ν)	He/She/It remained	ἔμενε(ν)	λένει
1p	α	μεν	ἐμείναμεν	We remained	ἐμένομεν	λένομεν
2p	α	τε	ἐμείνατε	You remained	ἐμένετε	λένετε
3p	α	ν	ἔμειναν	They remained	ἔμενον	λένουσι(ν)

p#	TF	PE	AMI	Meaning	IMpI	PMpI
1s	α	μην	ἐμεινάμην	I remained for myself	ἐμενόμην	μένομαι
2s	α	σο	ἐμείνω	You remained for yourself	ἐμένου	μένῃ
3s	α	το	ἐμείνατο	He/She/It remained for *self	ἐμένετο	μένεται
1p	α	μεθα	ἐμεινάμεθα	We remained for ourselves	ἐμενόμεθα	μενόμεθα
2p	α	σθε	ἐμείνασθε	You remained for yourselves	ἐμένεσθε	μένεσθε
3p	α	ντο	ἐμείναντο	They remained for themselves	ἐμένοντο	μένονται

Miscellaneous

- **Aorist deponents:**
  - **If the third principle part ends in "μην" then you know that the verb is middle deponent in the aorist tense.**
  - **If the verb is deponent in the present tense, it is not necessarily deponent in the aorist tense, and vise versa.**

- **Some verbs have a different meaning in the middle voice than in the active voice.**
  - **e.g. ἄρχω (active = I rule) vs. ἄρχομαι (middle = I begin).**
  - **e.g. ἄπτω (active = I light (a fire)) vs. ἄπτομαι (middle = I touch).**

Practice Parsing

ἐλαμβάνομην	
ἐλάβετο	
ἐμένομεν	
ἐλάβοντο	
ἐμείναμεν	
ἔμενον	
μένετε	
ἐμένου	
ἐλυόμην	
ἐλύοντο	
λύομαι	
ἔλυε(ν)	
λύουσι(ν)	
μένω	
λαμβάνεται	

λύομεν	
ἐμένεσθε	
ἔλαβον	
ἐλύσαμεν	
ἐλάβετε	
ἐλαμβανόμεθα	
ἐλαμβάνοντο	
ἔλυον	
ἐλύου	
λύεσθε	
μένομαι	
λαμβανόμεθα	
μένεται	
ἔμεινα	
ἔλυον	

Answers to Practice Parsing

ἐλαμβάνομην	**IMpI1S**	λύομεν	**PAI1P**
ἐλάβετο	**AMI3S**	ἐμένεσθε	**IMI2P**
ἐμένομεν	**IAI1P**	ἔλαβον	**AAI1S/3P**
ἐλάβοντο	**AMI3P**	ἐλύσαμεν	**AAI1P**
ἐμείναμεν	**AAI1P**	ἐλάβετε	**AAI2P**
ἔμενον	**IAI1S/3P**	ἐλαμβανόμεθα	**IMpI1P**
μένετε	**PAI2P**	ἐλαμβάνοντο	**IMpI3P**
ἐμένου	**IMI2S**	ἔλυον	**IAI3P**
ἐλυόμην	**IMpI1S**	ἐλύου	**IMpI2S**
ἐλύοντο	**IMpI3P**	λύεσθε	**PMpI2P**
λύομαι	**PMpI1S**	μένομαι	**PMpI1S**
ἔλυε(ν)	**IAI3S**	λαμβανόμεθα	**PMpI1P**
λύουσι(ν)	**PAI3P**	μένεται	**PMpI3S**
μένω	**PAI1S**	ἔμεινα	**AAI1S**
λαμβάνεται	**PMpI3S**	ἔλυον	**IAI1S/3P**

Aorist Passive Indicative (API) and Future Passive Indicative (FPI)

- **The aorist passive indicative is past time, undefined aspect, passive voice.**
  - **Normally translate the aorist passive indicative with the simple form of the English past tense, passive voice: "I was studied."**

- **The future passive indicative is future time, undefined (or perhaps sometimes continuous) aspect, passive voice.**
  - **Normally translate the future passive indicative with the simple form of the English future tense, passive voice: "I will be studied."**
  - **If it is continuous aspect, translate as "I will be being studied."**

	PAST	PRESENT	FUTURE
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

2 Ways to Form API. Same meaning.
2 Ways to Form FPI. Same meaning.

- **1API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem +** Tense Formative (θη)
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings
- **2API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem +** Tense Formative (η)
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings

- **1FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem +** Tense Formative (θησ)
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings
- **2FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem +** Tense Formative (ησ)
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings

- -

- **API means the same whether it is first or second aorist passive.**
  - **1API and 2API only difference is spelling of tense formative.**
- **FPI means the same whether it is first or second future passive.**
  - **1FPI and 2FPI only difference is spelling of tense formative.**
- **Some verbs use 1API sometimes and a 2API at other times.**
  This is like having two different ways of spelling the same word.

- Because the stem is different,
  verbs that take a first aorist in the active and middle voices
  don't necessarily take a first aorist in the passive voice.

- The same goes for second aorist passives.

- For example, ἀποστέλλω takes a first aorist in the active voice
  (and therefore the middle voice also),
  but it takes a second aorist in the passive voice.

- 1API and 1FPI are far more common in NT than 2API and 2FPI.

- 2API often implies 2FPI, but not always.

- Some verbs use 1API sometimes and a 2API at other times.

Both 1API and 2API Use Augment.
FPI Never Uses Augment.

- **1API = <u>Augment</u> + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (θη) + Secondary Active Personal Endings**

- **2API = <u>Augment</u> + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (η) + Secondary Active Personal Endings**

- **1FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (θησ) + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings**

- **2FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (ησ) + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings**

- -

- **API always uses augment because it is absolute past time.**

- **FPI never uses augment because it is future time.**

- **1API = Augment + <u>Aorist Passive Tense Stem</u> + Tense Formative (θη)
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings**

- **2API = Augment + <u>Aorist Passive Tense Stem</u> + Tense Formative (η)
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings**

- **1FPI = <u>Aorist Passive Tense Stem</u> + Tense Formative (θησ)
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings**

- **2FPI = <u>Aorist Passive Tense Stem</u> + Tense Formative (ησ)
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings**

- -

- **All API and FPI always use the aorist passive tense stem.**

- **The fact that the aorist passive tense stem is listed as a separate tense stem indicates that although it may be the same as the present tense stem or the aorist tense stem, it can also be different from both of those tense stems.**

- **API1S is the Sixth (6th) and Final Principal Part:
  PAI1S, FAI1S, AAI1S, TAI1S, TMpI1S, <u>API1S</u>**

Tense Formative Distinguishes Forms.
FPI Needs Connecting Vowel.

- **1API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (θη)**
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings
- **2API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (η)**
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings

- **1FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (θησ)**
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings
- **2FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (ησ)**
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings

- -

- **1API and 2API only difference is spelling of tense formative.**
- **1FPI and 2FPI only difference is spelling of tense formative.**

- **1API and 1FPI tense formatives begin with eta. 2API and 2FPI don't.**
- **FPI tense formative is same as API, except end with sigma.**
- **FPI needs connecting vowel because tense formative ends with consonant.**

Tense Stems Ending in a Stop
Combine with Theta of 1API & 1FPI Tense Formative

- **1API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem +⋮Tense Formative (θη)⋮**
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings

- **2API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (η)**
  + Secondary Active Personal Endings

- **1FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem +⋮Tense Formative (θησ)⋮**
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings

- **2FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (ησ)**
  + Connecting Vowel + Primary Middle Personal Endings

- **Labials and velars aspirate before theta. Dentals become sigma.**

- **Add one more column to the table of stops.**

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate	+ σ =	+ θ =
Labial	π	β	φ	ψ	φθ
Velar	κ	γ	χ	ξ	χθ
Dental	τ	δ	θ	σ	σθ

API Uses <u>Active</u> Personal Endings!
FPI Personal Endings Are Expected.

- **1API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (θη) + <u>Secondary Active</u> Personal Endings**
- **2API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (η) + <u>Secondary Active</u> Personal Endings**

- **1FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (θησ) + Connecting Vowel + <u>Primary Middle</u> Personal Endings**
- **2FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (ησ) + Connecting Vowel + <u>Primary Middle</u> Personal Endings**

- -

- **API uses <u>secondary</u> personal endings because augmented.**
- **FPI uses <u>primary</u> personal endings because unaugmented.**

- **API uses <u>active</u> personal endings. Surprising!**
- **FPI uses <u>middle</u> personal endings, as expected.**

Tense Formative Makes It Easy
To Recognize 1AP and 1FP

- **1API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative ($\theta\eta$) + <u>Secondary Active</u> Personal Endings**

- **2API = Augment + Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative (η) + <u>Secondary Active</u> Personal Endings**

- **1FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative ($\theta\eta\sigma$) + Connecting Vowel + <u>Primary Middle</u> Personal Endings**

- **2FPI = Aorist Passive Tense Stem + Tense Formative ($\eta\sigma$) + Connecting Vowel + <u>Primary Middle</u> Personal Endings**

- -

- **When you see theta-eta-sigma, it is almost always due to a future passive.**
  - **Confirm that by looking for a connecting vowel and a middle personal ending.**

- **When you see theta-eta without a sigma, it is almost always due to an aorist passive.**
  - **Confirm by looking for an active personal ending & the tense stem.**

API Uses Secondary Active Personal Endings, With Two Modifications.

- The API3S personal ending is –" instead of "–(ν)" because the movable nu never (?) shows up in the API3S.

- The API3P personal ending is "$\sigma\alpha\nu$" instead of "ν" for both first and second aorist passives.
  - This distinguishes between the first singular and third plural.
  - (Recall that the first aorist solved this problem in a different way, by using "–" as the 1AA1S personal ending).

p#	CV	Primary Active P.E.	Secondary Active P.E.	Primary Middle P.E.	Secondary Middle P.E.
1s	o	–	ν / – for 1AAI	μαι	μην
2s	ε	ις	ς	σαι	σο
3s	ε	ι	–(ν) / – for API	ται	το
1p	o	μεν	μεν	μεθα	μεθα
2p	ε	τε	τε	σθε	σθε
3p	o	νσι(ν)	ν / σαν for API	νται	ντο

Practice Remembering
the Personal Endings in the Indicative Mood

p#	CV	Primary Active P.E.	Secondary Active P.E.	Primary Middle P.E.	Secondary Middle P.E.
1s					
2s					
3s					
1p					
2p					
3p					

Verb Formation Chart

Tense	Aug	Red	TS	Tense Formative	CV	PE
PAI			P		o / ε	Primary Active
PMpI			P		o / ε	Primary Middle
IAI	X		P		o / ε	Secondary Active
IMpI	X		P		o / ε	Secondary Middle
FAI			FA	σ (εσ liquid)	o / ε	Primary Active
FMI			FA	σ (εσ liquid)	o / ε	Primary Middle
1AAI	X		AA	σα (α liquid) 3S is σε (ε liquid)		Secondary Active
2AAI	X		AA		o / ε	Secondary Active
1AMI	X		AA	σα (α liquid)		Secondary Middle
2AMI	X		AA		o / ε	Secondary Middle
API	X		AP	θη 1API (η 2API)		Secondary Active
FPI			AP	θησ 1FPI (ησ 2FPI)	o / ε	Primary Middle

Practice Filling in the Verb Formation Chart

Tense	Aug	Red	TS	Tense Formative	CV	PE
PAI						
PMpI						
IAI						
IMpI						
FAI						
FMI						
1AAI						
2AAI						
1AMI						
2AMI						
API						
FPI						

Tense Formative Distinguishes API from IAI.
λύω is 1st Aorist Passive. γράφω is 2nd Aorist Passive.

p#	Root	TF	PE	API	meaning	IAI
1s	λυ	θη	ν	ἐλύθην	I was loosed.	ἔλυον
2s	λυ	θη	ς	ἐλύθης	You were loosed.	ἔλυες
3s	λυ	θη	-	ἐλύθη	He/She/It was loosed.	ἔλυε(ν)
1p	λυ	θη	μεν	ἐλύθημεν	We were loosed.	ἐλύομεν
2p	λυ	θη	τε	ἐλύθητε	You were loosed.	ἐλύετε
3p	λυ	θη	σαν	ἐλύθησαν	They were loosed.	ἔλυον

p#	Root	TF	PE	API	meaning	IAI
1s	γραφ	η	ν	ἐγράφην	I was written.	ἔγραφον
2s	γραφ	η	ς	ἐγράφης	You were written.	ἔγραφες
3s	γραφ	η	-	ἐγράφη	He/She/It was written.	ἔγραφε(ν)
1p	γραφ	η	μεν	ἐγράφημεν	We were written.	ἐγράφομεν
2p	γραφ	η	τε	ἐγράφητε	You were written.	ἐγράφετε
3p	γραφ	η	σαν	ἐγράφησαν	They were written.	ἔγραφον

Practice Forming 1st Aorist Passive Indicative of λύω

p#	Root	TF	PE	API	meaning	IAI
1s	λυ					
2s						
3s						
1p						
2p						
3p						

Practice Forming 2nd Aorist Passive Indicative of γράφω

p#	Root	TF	PE	API	meaning	IAI
1s	γραφ					
2s						
3s						
1p						
2p						
3p						

Tense Formative, Augment, & Ending Distinguish FPI from API.
λύω is 1st Future Passive. γράφω is 2nd Future Passive.

p#	Root	TF	CV	PE	FPI	meaning	API
1s	λυ	θησ	ο	μαι	λυθήσομαι	I will be loosed.	ἐλύθην
2s	λυ	θησ	ε	σαι	λυθήσῃ	You will be loosed.	ἐλύθης
3s	λυ	θησ	ε	ται	λυθήσεται	He/She/It will be loosed.	ἐλύθη
1p	λυ	θησ	ο	μεθα	λυθησόμεθα	We will be loosed.	ἐλύθημεν
2p	λυ	θησ	ε	σθε	λυθήσεσθε	You will be loosed.	ἐλύθητε
3p	λυ	θησ	ο	νται	λυθήσονται	They will be loosed.	ἐλύθησαν

p#	Root	TF	CV	PE	FPI	meaning	API
1s	γραφ	ησ	ο	μαι	γραφήσομαι	I will be written.	ἐγράφην
2s	γραφ	ησ	ε	σαι	γραφήσῃ	You will be written.	ἐγράφης
3s	γραφ	ησ	ε	ται	γραφήσεται	He/She/It will be written.	ἐγράφη
1p	γραφ	ησ	ο	μεθα	γραφησόμεθα	We will be written.	ἐγράφημεν
2p	γραφ	ησ	ε	σθε	γραφήσεσθε	You will be written.	ἐγράφητε
3p	γραφ	ησ	ο	νται	γραφήσονται	They will be written.	ἐγράφησαν

Practice Forming 1st Future Passive Indicative of λύω

p#	Root	TF	CV	PE	FPI	meaning	API
1s	λυ						
2s							
3s							
1p							
2p							
3p							

Practice Forming 2nd Future Passive Indicative of γράφω

p#	Root	TF	CV	PE	FPI	meaning	API
1s	γραφ						
2s							
3s							
1p							
2p							
3p							

- **Middle deponent:**

  - **If the middle voice form is used for the active meaning, and there is no active voice form, then the verb is middle deponent in the future tense.**

  - **e.g. γενήσομαι is FMdI1S**

- **Passive deponent:**

  - **If the passive voice form is used for the active meaning, and there is no active or middle voice forms, then the verb is passive deponent in the future tense.**

  - **e.g. φοβηθήσεται is FPdI3S**

Tenses with Perfect Aspect Refer to a State of Affairs That Results from a Completed Action

- **Perfect aspect** indicates a state of affairs as a result of a completed action.

- **Pluperfect** indicates a past state of affairs (from viewpoint of writer) that resulted from a completed action. Someone in AD 2020 might say, "In 2002, George W. Bush had been elected president." The election was completed in 2000, but there was a state of affairs in 2002 that was past time from the viewpoint of AD 2020.

- **Perfect** indicates a present state of affairs (from viewpoint of writer) that results from a completed action. In 2002, the 2000 election is complete, and the state of affairs resulting from it in 2002 is present from the viewpoint of 2002.

- **Future Perfect** indicates a future state of affairs that results from a completed action. In 1990 (and in 2001), the state of affairs in 2002 resulting from the 2000 election is a future state of affairs, resulting from an action that will have been completed by 2002.

	PAST	**PRESENT**	**FUTURE**
CONTINUOUS ("imperfective") Aspect	Imperfect ("I was saying")	Present ("I am saying")	Future? ("I will be saying")
UNDEFINED ("aoristic") Aspect	Aorist ("I said")	Present ("I say")	Future ("I will say")
PERFECT ("perfective") Aspect	Pluperfect ("I had said")	Perfect ("I have said")	Future Perfect ("I will have said")

Meaning of Tenses in the Indicative Mood

Tense	Resurrection of Christ	Meaning and Emphasis
Imperfect	Christ was rising.	Process of a past even taking place.
Aorist	Christ rose.	Fact that the past event occurred.
Pluperfect	Christ had risen.	Past state of affairs resulting from a completed event. Not necessarily a present state of affairs.
Present	"Christ is rising" or "Christ rises."	Either a present process, or a present event.
Perfect	Christ is risen.	Present state of affairs resulting from a completed event.
Future	"Christ will rise" or perhaps "Christ will be rising."	Future event, or perhaps a future process.
Future perfect	"Christ will be risen."	Future state of affairs resulting from a completed event. Not necessarily a present event or state of affairs from viewpoint of speaker.

Tense	Aug	Red	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	PE
PAI			Present		o / ε	P A
PMpI			Present		o / ε	P M
IAI	X		Present		o / ε	S A
IMpI	X		Present		o / ε	S M
FAI			Future Active	σ [liquid εσ]	o / ε	P A
FMI			Future Active	σ [liquid εσ]	o / ε	P M
1AAI	X		Aorist Active	σα [Liquid α] [σε / ε 3S]		S A
2AAI	X		Aorist Active		o / ε	S A
1AMI	X		Aorist Active	σα [liquid α]		S M
2AMI	X		Aorist Active		o / ε	S M
TAI		X	Perfect Active	κα [α 2nd] [κε / ε 3S]		P A
LAI	X?	X	Perfect Active	κει [ει 2nd]		S A
RAI		X	Perfect Active	σ	o / ε	P A
TMpI		X	Perfect Middle			P M
LMpI	X?	X	Perfect Middle			S M
RMpI		X	Perfect Middle	σ	o / ε	P M
API	X		Aorist Passive	θη [η 2nd]		S A
FPI			Aorist Passive	θησ [ησ 2nd]	o / ε	P M

Tense	Aug	Red	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	PE
PAI						
PMpI						
IAI						
IMpI						
FAI						
FMI						
1AAI						
2AAI						
1AMI						
2AMI						
TAI						
LAI						
RAI						
TMpI						
LMpI						
RMpI						
API						
FPI						

Reduplication Happens at the Front of a Verb
With Perfect Aspect

PAI1S	TAI1S	Explain the form of the augment
λύω	λέλυκα	If the word begins with a single consonant, duplicate the initial consonant, and separate the double consonant with an epsilon.
ἀγαπάω	ἠγάπηκα	If the word begins with a vowel, lengthen the vowel to reduplicate, just like an augment. Alpha (α) lengthens to eta (η).
φανερόω	πεφανέρωκα	Reduplicated aspirate is unvoiced.
χαρίζομαι	κεχάρισμαι	Reduplicated aspirate is unvoiced.
θεραπεύω	τεθεράπευμαι	Reduplicated aspirate is unvoiced.
γινώσκω	ἔγνωκα	If the verb begins with two consonants, it usually adds an epsilon to the front but doesn't double the consonants.
γράφω	γέγραφα	If the verb begins with two consonants and the second consonant is lambda or rho, it will usually reduplicate the first consonant.
ἐκβάλλω	ἐκβέβληκα	Compound verbs reduplicate the verbal part of a compound verb.

Reduplicated Asperate is Unvoiced

- **If the verb that is reduplicated
  begins with a consonant that is an aspirate
  (i.e., in the third column of the table of stops from chapter 10),
  then when reduplicating the aspirate,
  change it to the unvoiced stop (first column)
  from the same row of the table of stops.**

- φανερόω πεφανέρωκα φ ➔ φεφ ➔ πεφ
- χαρίζομαι κεχάρισμαι χ ➔ χεχ ➔ κεχ
- θεραπεύω τεθεράπευμαι θ ➔ θεθ ➔ τεθ

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate
Labial	π	β	φ
Velar	κ	γ	χ
Dental	τ	δ	θ

Formation of Perfect Indicative

- **Tense stems**
  - **The perfect active and perfect middle/passive tense stems may be different from each other, from the present tense, and from the root. Or they may be the same.**
  - **Because they are separate tense stems, the fourth and fifth principle parts of a verb are the TAI1S and TmpI1S.**
- **Tense formative**
  - **The TAI uses "κα" for a tense formative, except for the 3S form, where it uses "κε". This is similar to what happens to the tense formative in the 1AAI, which switches from "σα" to "σε" in the 3S.**
  - **There is a 2nd form of the TAI, which uses "α" and "ε" for a T.F.**
  - **The TMpI does not use a tense formative.**
- **Connecting vowel.**
  - **The TAI does not use a connecting vowel. This makes sense because the tense formative ends with a vowel, so there is no need to add another vowel for pronunciation purposes.**
  - **The <u>TMpI does not use a connecting vowel</u>. This is strange because there is no tense formative to provide a vowel.**

Contract Vowels Lengthen in TAI and TMpI.
"Stop" Stems Change in TMpI because Lack Vowel.

- **Contract verbs lengthen their contract vowel in the TAI and TMpI.**
  - **Rule: "Contract vowels contract with the connecting vowel if they touch it. And they lengthen if they can't contract."**

- **Verbs with a perfect middle stem that ends in a stop undergo changes in the TMpI because the lack of a vowel (neither a connecting vowel nor a vowel in a tense formative).**
  - **In 2S forms, the stop combines with the sigma of σαι according to the table of stops.**
  - **In 2P forms the stop combines with the σθ of σθε according to the table of stops.**
  - **In 3S forms the stop becomes unvoiced
    (Labials π, β, φ ➜ π. Velars κ, γ, χ ➜ κ. Dentals τ, δ, θ ➜ τ).**
  - **1S, 1P, and 3P forms don't fit a pattern in the table of stops.
    (Labials π, β, φ ➜ μ. Velars κ, γ, χ ➜ γ. Dentals τ, δ, θ ➜ σ).**

- Because the perfect is not augmented, it uses the primary personal endings, as expected.

- There are two exceptions to the primary active endings in the perfect active:
  - The 3S personal ending is always "–(ν)" instead of "ι", which makes its ending identical to the 3S augmented active personal ending.
  - The 3P personal ending is sometimes "νσι(ν)" as expected, and is sometimes "ν", which makes it identical to the 3P augmented active personal ending.

- The perfect middle and passive voices use the primary middle endings as expected.
  - There are no exceptions in the middle endings.
  - I know of no class of exceptions to the middle endings in any tense.

Complete Set of Personal Endings
for "Thematic Verbs" (Not μι Verbs) in the Indicative Mood

- Use active endings for the active voice and the aorist passive.

- Use middle endings for everything else (middle, middle/passive, and future passive).

- Use secondary endings for absolute past time

  – aorist, imperfect, and pluperfect tenses in the indicative mood.

  – These are the augmented tenses (except that the pluperfect sometimes doesn't bother to augment).

p#	CV	Primary Active P.E.	Secondary Active P.E.	Primary Middle P.E.	Secondary Middle P.E.
1s	ο	–	ν / – for 1AAI	μαι	μην
2s	ε	ις / ς for TAI	ς	σαι	σο
3s	ε	ι / –(ν) for TAI	–(ν) / – for API	ται	το
1p	ο	μεν	μεν	μεθα	μεθα
2p	ε	τε	τε	σθε	σθε
3p	ο	νσι(ν) / ν for some TAI	ν / σαν for API	νται	ντο

Practice Remembering
the Personal Endings in the Indicative Mood

p#	CV	Primary Active P.E.	Secondary Active P.E.	Primary Middle P.E.	Secondary Middle P.E.
1s					
2s					
3s					
1p					
2p					
3p					

Examples of Perfect Active Indicative (TAI).
λύω is 1st Perfect Active. γράφω is 2nd Perfect Active.

p#	Root	TF	PE	TAI	meaning
1s	λυ	κα	–	λέλυκα	I have loosed.
2s	λυ	κα	ς	λέλυκας	You have loosed.
3s	λυ	κε	–(ν)	λέλυκε(ν)	He/She/It has loosed.
1p	λυ	κα	μεν	λελύκαμεν	We have loosed.
2p	λυ	κα	τε	λελύκατε	You have loosed.
3p	λυ	κα	νσι(ν) or ν	λελύκασι(ν) or λέλυκαν	They have loosed.

p#	Root	TF	PE	TAI	meaning
1s	γραφ	α	–	γέγραφα	I have written.
2s	γραφ	α	ς	γέγραφας	You have written.
3s	γραφ	ε	–(ν)	γέγραφε(ν)	He/She/It has written.
1p	γραφ	α	μεν	γεγράφαμεν	We have written.
2p	γραφ	α	τε	γεγράφατε	You have written.
3p	γραφ	α	νσι(ν) or ν	γεγράφασι(ν) or γέγραφαν	They have written.

Practice Inflecting Perfect Active Indicative (TAI)
with λύω (1st Perfect Active)

p#	Root	TF	PE	TAI	meaning
1s					
2s					
3s					
1p					
2p					
3p					

Practice Inflecting Perfect Active Indicative (TAI)
with γράφω (2nd Perfect Active)

p#	Root	TF	PE	TAI	meaning
1s					
2s					
3s					
1p					
2p					
3p					

Example: Inflect λύω in the Perfect Middle/Passive Indicative

- **Why is there no 2nd perfect middle/passive?**
    - **Because 2nd forms shrink the tense formative, and there is no tense formative in the perfect middle/passive.**

p#	Root	PE	TAI	meaning
1s	λυ	μαι	λέλυμαι	I have been loosed.
2s	λυ	σαι	λέλυσαι	You have been loosed.
3s	λυ	ται	λέλυται	He/She/It has been loosed.
1p	λυ	μεθα	λελύμεθα	We have been loosed.
2p	λυ	σθε	λέλυσθε	You have been loosed.
3p	λυ	νται	λελύνται	They have been loosed.

Meaning of the Middle Voice

- **In classical Greek, the middle voice indicated that the action of the verb in some way affects the subject. This is rare in the Koine Greek in which the NT was written.**
  - **Matthew 27:5 "Judas hanged himself."**
  - **αἰτέω (active) I ask. (middle) I ask for myself.**
  - **βαπτίζω (active) I baptize. (middle) I dip myself.**
  - **εὑρίσκω (active) I find. (middle) I obtain for myself.**
- **Most middle voice forms in the NT are deponent, meaning that there is no active form, and the middle voice has an active meaning.**
  - **A few verbs are both middle and passive deponent in a tense. γίνομαι lacks an active voice form in the aorist tense, but it has both an AMI form ἐγενόμην and an API form ἐγενήθην, both of which have active meaning (if we can think of a copulative verb as having voice, which I doubt).**
- **Some verbs have a different meaning in the middle voice than the active voice. e.g. ἄρχω (active) I rule. (middle) I begin.**

- **If it is deponent, note that in your parsing with an underlined "d".**
  - **E.g., PMpdI2P**

- **If it is in the aorist or future,
  where the middle has a distinct form from the passive,
  then parse it as middle if it is not deponent.**

- **If it is in the present, imperfect, or perfect tenses, where the middle and middle and passive forms are identical, parse it as middle/passive (Mp), and then decide based on context and the verb itself which it is, and underline the correct one (Mp or Mp).**
  - **Most middle/passive forms in the NT that are not deponent are passive.**

Road Map:
Five Chapters of Participles

- **0-4: Introductory matters**

- **5-14: Nouns, etc.**

- **15-35: Verb Stuff**
  - **15-25: Indicative Mood**
  - **26-30: Participles**
  - **31-33: Non-Indicative Moods**
  - **34-35: μι Verbs**

- **26: Introduction to Participles**
- **27: Present Adverbial Participles**
- **28: Aorist Adverbial Participles**
- **29: Adjectival Participles**
- **30: Perfect Participles**

Preview of Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. **Review adjectives**
   - **Case endings & uses**

2. **Participles are adjectives**
   - **Same case endings & uses**

3. **Participles are formed from verbs**
   - **Subset of same tenses**
     - **Tense → aspect & relative time**
   - **Same voices**
   - **No mood or person**

4. **What determines gender, number, & case of participles**

5. **Determining use & translation of participles**

26.1

Review: Adjectives Can Be Any GNC.
Adjectives Use Case Endings.

Declension	2	1	2
Gender	M	F	N
SN	ἀγαθός	ἀγαθή	ἀγαθόν
SG	ἀγαθοῦ	ἀγαθῆς	ἀγαθοῦ
SD	ἀγαθῷ	ἀγαθῇ	ἀγαθῷ
SA	ἀγαθόν	ἀγαθήν	ἀγαθόν
PN	ἀγαθοί	ἀγαθαί	ἀγαθά
PG	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν	ἀγαθῶν
PD	ἀγαθοῖς	ἀγαθαῖς	ἀγαθοῖς
PA	ἀγαθούς	ἀγαθάς	ἀγαθά

Review: Greek Adjectives Have 4 Uses

- **Attributive**
  - Modifies a noun.
  - "The <u>black</u> book is a bible."
- **Predicate**
  - Asserts something about a noun.
  - "That bible is <u>black</u>."
- **Substantival**
  - Takes the place of a noun.
  - "The *good*, the *bad*, and the *ugly* all need Christ."
- **Adverbial**
  - Takes the place of an adverb.
  - "I'm doing <u>good</u>."
  - Bad English, but proper Greek!
  - Often neuter accusative.

- **Case**
  - **Function in clause determines case.**
    - **Attributive – Same function in clause as noun it modifies.**
    - **Predicate – Same function in clause as noun it modifies.**
    - **Substantival – Function in clause determines case.**
    - **Adverbial – Function in clause has no clear case. Usually accusative.**
  - **Function in clause determines case of everything that uses case endings (i.e., nouns, adjectives, & participles)**

- **Gender & Number**
  - **What-it-refers-to determines gender & number.**
    - **Attributive refers to what it modifies.**
    - **Predicate refers to what it modifies.**
    - **Substantival refers to what it replaces.**
    - **Adverbial refers to ???.**
      - **Adverbial adjectives usually neuter.**

Preview of Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. **Review adjectives**
   – **Case endings & uses**

2. **Participles are adjectives**
   – **Same case endings & uses**

3. **Participles are formed from verbs**
   – **Subset of same tenses**
     • **Tense → aspect & relative time**
   – **Same voices**
   – **No mood or person**

4. **What determines gender, number, & case of participles**

5. **Determining use & translation of participles**

**Participles Have Gender, Number, and Case
Because They Are Adjectives**

- **A Participle <u>is an adjective</u> that is formed from a verb.**

- **Adjectives have <u>Gender</u>, <u>Number</u>, and <u>Case</u>.**

- **Participles have Tense, Voice, <u>Gender</u>, <u>Number</u>, and <u>Case</u>.**
  - **Any gender, number, and case (like adjectives)**
  - **Same case endings**

**Participles Have Same Uses As Adjectives
Because They Are Adjectives**

- **Four uses of adjectives:**
    - **Attributive [e.g., The <u>tall</u> woman]**
    - **Predicate [e.g., The woman is <u>tall</u>.]**
    - **Substantival [e.g., <u>The good</u>, <u>the bad</u>, and <u>the ugly</u> all need Jesus.]**
    - **Adverbial [e.g., It works <u>good</u>.]**

- **Same four uses for participles:**
    - **Attributive [e.g., The <u>living</u> woman]**
    - **Predicate [e.g., The woman is <u>living</u>.]**
    - **Substantival [e.g., The <u>living</u> need Jesus.]**
    - **Adverbial [e.g., It works <u>while falling</u>.]**

- **One other use for participles:**
    - **Independent verb [e.g., He <u>is living</u>.]**
        - **Very rare**

Practice Identifying Participles and their Functions

- **What are the five ways that participles can function?**

- **Identify the following English participles and their functions:**
    - **[After] rising from the dead, Jesus proved that He was alive.**
    - **Jesus saves believing girls.**
    - **The girl is believing.**
    - **The believing have been reborn.**
    - **Jesus emptied himself by taking on the form of a servant.**
    - **Jesus promised to give us living water.**
    - **Living is the word of God and active.**
    - **All the believing in Him will not perish but have eternal life.**
    - **Judas was a guide to [those who were] arresting Jesus.**
    - **[After] fasting, Jesus became hungry.**
    - **Humble yourselves [by] casting your cares on Him.**
    - **Having eyes, do you not see?**

Examples from Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*

Review Questions

- ➤ A participle is an _____ that is formed from a ____.

- ➤ What do adjectives have? (Think how you parse an adjective.)

- ➤ What do participles have that adjectives have?

- ➤ What determines the gender, number, & case of an adjective?

- ➤ What determines the gender, number, & case of a participle?

- ➤ What endings do participles use? Why?

- ➤ What are the 4 uses of adjectives?

- ➤ What are the 5 uses of participles?

Preview of Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. **Review adjectives**

    – **Case endings & uses**

2. **Participles are adjectives**

    – **Same case endings & uses**

3. **Participles are formed from verbs**

    – **No mood or person**

    – **Same voices**

    – **Subset of same tenses**

        • **Tense → aspect & relative time**

4. **What determines gender, number, & case of participles**

5. **Determining use & translation of participles**

A Participle is Formed from a Verb

- **A Participle is an adjective <u>that is formed from a verb</u>.**

- **E.g., λύοντες is a participle formed from the verb λύω.**
  - **The lexical form of the participle λύοντες is λύω.**
  - ➤ **What is the lexical form of the participle ἀγαπῶντες?**

- **Finite verbs have <u>Tense</u>, <u>Voice</u>, Mood, Person, and <u>Number</u> (e.g., PAI1S).**

- **Participles have <u>Tense</u>, <u>Voice</u>, Gender, <u>Number</u>, and Case.**

- **How to form a participle from a verb:**
  - **Keep tense, voice, and number from verb.**
  - **Drop mood from verb because "participle" replaces mood.**
  - **Drop person from verb because no room for personal endings.**
  - **Add gender and case to form an adjective.**

How to Parse a Participle

- **When you parse a participle, report:**
  - **Lexical form, tense, voice, "participle", gender, number, case, meaning of the inflected form.**
  - **E.g., λύοντες is from λύω, present active participle, masculine plural nominative, meaning "while they are loosing".**
    - **Use this parsing code PAPMPN**

- ➢ **Explain the following parsing tags for participles:**
  - ➢ **PAPFPN**
  - ➢ **PMpPFPN**
  - ➢ **PAPNPG**
  - ➢ **AAPFSG**
  - ➢ **APPFSG**
  - ➢ **TMpPFSG**
  - ➢ **TMpdPFSG**

Participles Don't Have Mood

- **A Participle is an adjective <u>that is formed from a verb</u>.**
- **Finite verbs have <u>Tense</u>, <u>Voice</u>, Mood, Person, and <u>Number</u> (e.g., PAI1S).**
- **Participles have <u>Tense</u>, <u>Voice</u>, Gender, <u>Number</u>, and Case.**

- **Participles do not have mood.**
  - **Therefore participles are not indicative mood.**
    - **Therefore, participles don't have absolute time.**
    - **Therefore, participles never augment.**

- **Write "participle" where you would list the mood when parsing finite verbs.**

Participles Do Not Have Person, So They Don't Use Personal Endings

- **Person is 1st person, 2nd person, or 3rd person.**

- **If a verb has "person," it is called a "finite verb."**
  - **"Finite" because it is "limited" to a "person."**

- **All verb forms we have seen thus far have person.**
  - **Therefore all verb forms we have seen thus far are finite verbs.**
  - **E.g., PAI1S is 1st person, and therefore a finite verb.**

- **Finite verbs use personal endings because they have person.**

- **Participles are not finite verbs.**
  - ➤ **Therefore, what do participles NOT have? Why?**
  - ➤ **Therefore, what endings don't participles use? Why?**
  - ➤ **What endings do participles use? Why?**

Like Other Verbs, Participles Have Voice

1. **While studying** the artist, I remained motionless.

2. **While studying myself**, I remained motionless.

3. **While being studied** by the artist, I remained motionless.

➤ **What is the difference in meaning between the sentences above?**

➤ **How does English form a participle from a verb?**

➤ **What types of voice can a participle be?**

➤ **What would it mean if a participle is middle deponent?**

Participles Have Tense
Because They Are Formed From Verbs

- **Greek participles have tense.**

- **Only certain tenses are used in participles:**
  - **Present, Aorist, Perfect, and Future (rare).**
  - **One tense per aspect, and then the future used rarely to indicate future time.**

- **Participle tense indicates aspect and relative time.**
  - **Aspect may be emphasized, or may be absent. Context!**
  - **Relative time may be emphasized, or may be absent. Context!**

Tense Indicates Aspect & Time
For Both Indicative Mood & Participles

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Indicative	Present Indicative	Future Indicative
Continuous Aspect	Imperfect Indicative	Present Indicative	Future Indicative?
Perfect Aspect	Pluperfect Indicative	Perfect Indicative	Future Perfect Indicative

	Relative Past	Relative Present	Relative Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Participle	(Aorist Participle)	Future Participle
Continuous Aspect		Present Participle	Future Participle?
Perfect Aspect	Perfect Participle?	Perfect Participle?	

**Participles Have Relative Time,
Not Absolute Time**

- **Participles have relative time, not absolute time.**

- **Absolute time**
  - **Only exists in the indicative mood.**
  - **Past, present, or future from the viewpoint of the writer.**

- **Relative time**
  - **Only exists in participles.**
  - **Past, present, or future from the viewpoint of the main verb.**

Absolute Time: Writer is Reference Point.
Relative Time: Main Verb is Reference Point.

- **Absolute Time**

  – **Indicative mood verb**

  – **Past/Present/Future with respect to the speaker/writer.**

    - **Past: Jesus rose/was rising/had risen.**

    - **Present: Jesus rises/is rising/has risen.**

    - **Future: Jesus will rise/will be rising/will have risen.**

- **Relative Time**

  – **Participle**

  – **Past/Present/Future with respect to the main verb.**

    - **Past: <u>After rising</u>, Jesus appeared to Peter.**

    - **Present: <u>While rising</u>, Jesus was not seen by anyone.**

    - **Future: <u>Before rising</u>, Jesus was in the tomb for three days.**

  – **The "after," "while," and "before" are usually implied by the participle rather than explicitly in the text.**

Greek Participles Have Tense, Which Indicates Aspect and Relative Time.

- Tense of a Greek participle indicates aspect and relative time.
  - Aspect & Time may be absent in a particular context.
    - Particularly for substantival and adjectival participles.

- Note: Wallace *GGBB* 614, 626 states that the perfect participle usually indicates past time, but every example I've examined seems to be present.
- Translate perfect temporal participles with "after" because of the aspect.

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Participle	(Aorist Participle)	Future Participle
Continuous Aspect		Present Participle	
Perfect Aspect	Perfect Participle?	Perfect Participle?	

- **Relative time of aorist participles:**
  - **Normally PAST TIME:**
    - **At the time of the main verb, the participle was already past.**
    - **E.g., "<u>After fasting</u> forty days and forty nights, he then became hungry." (Mt 4:2).**
      - Or can be translated "<u>After he fasted</u>…"
  - **Sometimes PRESENT TIME:**
    - **Only occurs if the main verb is also aorist.**
    - **The participle happened at the same time as the main verb.**
    - **E.g., "<u>Answering</u>, he said…" (Matthew 3:15)**
      - Or can be translated "<u>He answered and</u> said."
      - The aorist participle "answering" occurs at the same time as the aorist finite verb "said" because the answering IS the saying.
      - Source: Wallace *GGBB* 624-625.

Review Questions

- ➤ A participle is an _____ that is formed from a ____.
- ➤ The lexical form of a participle is the lexical form of a _____.
- ➤ What is the lexical form of the participle λύοντες?
- ➤ What do finite verbs have? (think how you parse a finite verb)
- ➤ What do finite verbs have that participles lack?
- ➤ Because participles don't have m____, they cannot have _____ time (which only occurs in the ____ mood), and so they never _____.
- ➤ What kind of time do participles have?
- ➤ What tenses occur in participles? How can you remember that?
- ➤ What do adjectives have? (think how you parse an adjective)
- ➤ What do adjectives have that participles lack?
- ➤ What endings do participles use? Why?
- ➤ What endings don't participles use? Why?

Preview of Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. **Review adjectives**
   - **Case endings & uses**

2. **Participles are adjectives**
   - **Same case endings & uses**

3. **Participles are formed from verbs**
   - **No mood or person**
   - **Same voices**
   - **Subset of same tenses**
     - **Tense → aspect & relative time**

4. **What determines gender, number, & case of participles**

5. **Determining use & translation of participles**

- **Case of Adjective**
  - **Function in clause determines case.**
    - **Attributive – Same function in clause as noun it modifies.**
    - **Predicate – Same function in clause as noun it modifies.**
    - **Substantival – Function in clause determines case.**
    - **Adverbial – Function in clause has no clear case. Usually accusative.**
  - **Function in clause determines case of everything that uses case endings (i.e., nouns, adjectives, & participles)**

- **Gender & Number of Adjective**
  - **What-it-refers-to determines gender & number.**
    - **Attributive refers to what it modifies.**
    - **Predicate refers to what it modifies.**
    - **Substantival refers to what it replaces.**
    - **Adverbial refers to ???.**
      - **Adverbial adjectives usually neuter.**

What Sets the Gender, Number, and Case of a Participle

- **Gender and Number and Case of a participle**
  - **Same as the substantive which:**
    - **Does the action of the participle (active or middle voice or deponent), or**
    - **Receives the action of the participle (passive voice).**

- **The substantive may be explicit or implicit.**

- **If there is no substantive (i.e., substantival participle), then the gender and number of the participle are set by what it stands for, and its case is set by its function in its clause (just like a substantival adjective).**

Comparing GNC of Adjectives & Participles

- **Attributive & Predicate**
  - **Adjective matches GNC of noun it modifies.**
  - **Participle matches GNC of noun doing/receiving its action**
  - **Same because participle modifies noun doing/receiving its action.**

- **Substantival**
  - **Adjective & Participle match GN of noun it replaces.**
  - **Adjective & Participle case set by function in clause.**

- **Adverbial**
  - **Adjective usually neuter accusative.**
  - **Participle matches GNC of noun doing/receiving its action**

- **Independent Verb**
  - **Adjective – not an option**
  - **Participle matches GNC of noun doing/receiving its action**

Questions on the Gender, Number, and Case of a Participle

➢ **What sets the gender, number, and case of a participle?**

➢ **The GNC of an attributive adjectival participle are the same as what?**

➢ **The GNC of a predicate adjectival participle are the same as what?**

➢ **The underlined words translate a Greek participle. What is the GNC?**

  ➢ **The <u>living</u> woman sat down.**

  ➢ **The woman is <u>living</u>.**

  ➢ **The <u>falling things</u> are hard.**

  ➢ **It works <u>while falling</u>.**

  ➢ **He <u>is living</u>.**

  ➢ **The <u>living</u> need Jesus. [If I'm referring to men.]**

  ➢ **The <u>living</u> need Jesus. [If I'm referring to women.]**

  ➢ **The <u>living</u> need Jesus. [If I'm referring to both men & women.]**

➢ **How are the underlined participles being used?**

Preview of Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. **Review adjectives**

    – **Case endings & uses**

2. **Participles are adjectives**

    – **Same case endings & uses**

3. **Participles are formed from verbs**

    – **No mood or person**

    – **Same voices**

    – **Subset of same tenses**

        • **Tense → aspect & relative time**

4. **What determines gender, number, & case of participles**

5. **Determining use & translation of participles**

Determining the Use of a Participle

- **Context, not form, determines the use of the participle.**

- **Use three questions to determine the use of the participle:**
  1. **Does it have an article?**
     - **Yes → Must be attributive adjectival or substantival.**
     - **No → Can be any of the five uses.**
  2. **Does it match the GNC of an explicit substantive in the clause?**
     - **Yes → Can be any of the five uses.**
     - **No → Cannot be attributive adjectival or predicate adjectival.**
  3. **What use fits the context?**
     - **Try all of the possible uses, and see which fits the context.**
     - **Independent verb is very rare or non-existent use. Last resort.**

Participial Phrases

- **A participial phrase includes:**
  - **The participle**
  - **Any words that modify the participle (adjective, adverb)**
    - **μή is used to negate a participle. (οὐ is only for indicative verbs)**
  - **Direct object of the participle**
- **A participial phrase does not usually include the substantive that does/receives the action of the participle.**
  - **Because it usually part of the main clause of the sentence.**
  - **For future reference: The exception is absolute participles.**

- **E.g., "While quietly eating a big sandwich, I studied Greek."**
  - **The participial phrase is "while quietly eating a big sandwich".**
  - **"Eating" is the participle.**
  - **"A big sandwich" is the direct object of the participle.**
  - **"Quietly" is an adverb that modifies the participle.**
  - **"I" is the substantive that does the action of the participle. It is not part of the participial phrase.**

Many Types of Adverbial Participles

- **Adverbial participles:**
  - **Answer when, why, or how about the independent verb.**
    - **When? Temporal**
    - **Why? Purpose, Result, Concession, Condition, Cause**
    - **How? Manner, Means**

- **Other semi-adverbial participles (See Wallace for details):**
  - **Attendant circumstance**
  - **Indirect discourse**
  - **Complementary: "Continue <u>sitting</u>."**
  - **Periphrastic**
  - **Redundant: "Jesus <u>answered and</u> said"**

- **Distinguished mostly by context. Wallace gives additional clues.**

Translating Adverbial Participles

- To translate an adverbial participial phrase:
  - Key word indicates use:
    - Before, while, after, because, in order to, even though, etc.
  - Substantive doing/receiving participle:
    - If substantive is explicit in the Greek, translate it.
    - If not, may or may not add it.
      - E.g., "<u>While he was going</u>, …"
      - E.g., "<u>While going</u>…"
  - Translate the participle.
    - Often as an "-ing" word, but sometimes as a finite verb.
  - Include the other elements of the participial phrase.

- E.g., "<u>While she was</u> quietly <u>eating</u> a big sandwich, Sue studied Greek."
- E.g., "<u>While</u> quietly <u>eating</u> a big sandwich, Sue studied Greek."
- E.g., "<u>Because he was hungry</u>, Joe ate a big sandwich."

Translating Temporal Adverbial Participles

- The **underlined words** translate the Greek participle (one word in Greek!).

- **PAP:** "<u>While Jesus was walking</u> beside the Sea of Galilee,…" (Mt 4:18)
- **PMP:** "And if you meet your enemy's ox <u>while it is leading itself astray</u>" (Ex 23:4)
- **PPP:** "<u>While</u> we <u>were being driven about</u> in the Adriatic…" (Ac 27:27)

- **AAP:** "<u>After hearing the king</u>, they traveled…" (Mt 2:9)
- **APP:** "<u>After being baptized</u>, Jesus came up…" (Mt 3:16)

- Alternately, you can translate temporal aorist participles using a pronoun and a finite verb ["<u>After they heard</u>," "<u>After he called to himself</u>," "<u>After he was baptized</u>."] This clarifies that the aspect is undefined rather than continuous, but obscures the participle nature.

- **TAP:** "Some… will not taste death until they behold the Kingdom of God <u>after it has come</u> with power." (Mk 9:1)
- **TPP:** "But everyone, <u>after he has been completely trained</u>, will be like his teacher." (Lk 6:40).

- **TMP, FAP, FMP, FPP:** No temporal uses in the GNT or LXX.
- **AMP:** Still looking for a needle in the haystack…

Review of Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. **Review adjectives**
   – **Have GNC so use case endings**
   – **4 uses: Attributive, Predicate, Substantival, Adverbial**
2. **Participles are adjectives**
   – **Same case endings and uses (+ independent verb use rarely)**
3. **Participles are formed from verbs**
   – **No mood or person**
   – **Voice determines if doing/receiving participle**
   – **Tenses: Present, Aorist, Perfect, and Future**
     • **Tense → aspect & relative time**
4. **GNC of participle = GNC of substantive doing/receiving participle**
5. **Determining use**
   – **A) Article → Substantival or attributive.**
   – **B) No explicit substantive → Not attributive or predicate.**
   – **C) Context**
6. **Translate temporal adverbial participles "before/during/after Xing/being Xed"**

Review Questions on Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. Participles are _____ that are formed from _____.
2. When parsing a participle, what do you report?
3. What endings do participles use? Why?
4. What tenses occur in participles?
5. What does the tense of a participle indicate?
6. Explain relative time.
7. What determines gender, number, & case of participles?
8. What is the difference in meaning between active & passive voice participles?
9. What uses do participles have?
10. What three steps do you use in determining the use of a participle?
11. Translate λύω as a temporal adverbial PAPMSN and as a PPPFPN.

Review Questions on Chapter 26: Intro to Participles

1. Participles are <u>adjectives</u> that are formed from <u>verbs</u>.
2. When parsing a participle, report <u>lexical form, tense, voice, "participle,"</u> <u>gender, number, person, meaning of inflected form.</u>
3. Participles use <u>case endings</u> because <u>they have GNC</u>.
4. The tense of a participle can be <u>present, aorist, perfect, or future</u>.
5. The tense of a participle indicates <u>aspect & relative time.</u>
6. <u>At the time of the main verb, the participle is past, present, or future.</u>
7. The GNC of a participle <u>agrees with the substantive doing/receiving it.</u>
8. In an active, middle, or deponent participle, <u>the substantive with which</u> <u>the substantive agrees in GNC does the action of the participle.</u>
   In a passive participle, <u>the substantive receives the action of the participle</u>
9. Participle uses: <u>attributive, predicate, substantival, adverbial,</u> <u>independent verb.</u>
10. Steps for determining use: <u>(1) Article → attributive or substantival, (2)</u> <u>No explicit substantive → not attributive or predicate, (3) Context</u>
11. Temporal adverbial λύω PAPMSN is "while he was loosing"
    Temporal adverbial λύω PPPFPN is "while she was being loosed"

Preview of Chapter 27: Present Adverbial Participles

1. **Present tense**

   – **Present relative time + continuous aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**

   – **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**

   – **Translate "While Xing" or "While being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**

   – **Never have article**

   – **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming present participles**

5. **Parsing present participles**

27.1 **Participle Tense Indicates Aspect & Relative Time.**
Chapter 27 Covers Present Participles.

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Participle	(Aorist Participle)	Future Participle
Continuous Aspect		Present Participle	
Perfect Aspect	Perfect Participle?	Perfect Participle?	

- **Present relative time**
  - **Relative time = time of main verb, not time of writer.**
  - **Same time as the main verb.**
    - **E.g., "While she was praying, Jesus was listening to her prayer."**

- **Continuous aspect.**

Preview of Chapter 27: Present Adverbial Participles

1. **Present tense**

    –   **Present relative time + continuous aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**

    –   **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**

    –   **Translate "While Xing" or "While being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**

    –   **Never have article**

    –   **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming present participles**

5. **Parsing present participles**

Participles Have Same Uses As Adjectives.
Chapter 27 Covers Adverbial Use

- **Four uses of adjectives:**
  - **Attributive [e.g., The <u>tall</u> woman]**
  - **Predicate [e.g., The woman is <u>tall</u>.]**
  - **Substantival [e.g., <u>The good</u>, <u>the bad</u>, and <u>the ugly</u> all need Jesus.]**
  - **Adverbial [e.g., It works <u>good</u>.]**

- **Same four uses for participles:**
  - **Attributive [e.g., The <u>living</u> woman]**
  - **Predicate [e.g., The woman is <u>living</u>.]**
  - **Substantival [e.g., The <u>living</u> need Jesus.]**
  - **Adverbial [e.g., It works <u>while falling</u>.]** ⬅ *Chapter 27*

- **One other use for participles:**
  - **Independent verb [e.g., He <u>is living</u>.]**
    - **Very rare**

Many Types of Adverbial Participles.
Chapter 27 Covers Temporal Adverbial

- **Adverbial participles:**
  - Answer when, why, or how about the independent verb.
    - When? Temporal   ← *Chapter 27*
    - Why? Purpose, Result, Concession, Condition, Cause
    - How? Manner, Means

- **Other semi-adverbial participles (See Wallace for details):**
  - Attendant circumstance
  - Indirect discourse
  - Complementary: "Continue <u>sitting</u>."
  - Periphrastic
  - Redundant: "Jesus <u>answered and</u> said"

- **Distinguished mostly by context. Wallace gives additional clues.**

Translating Adverbial Participles

- **To translate an adverbial participial phrase:**
  - **Key word indicates use:**
    - **Before, ⟨while,⟩ after, because, in order to, even though, etc.**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving participle:**
    - **If substantive is explicit in the Greek, translate it.**
    - **If not, may or may not add it.**
      - **E.g., "While he was going, …"**
      - **E.g., "While going…"**
  - **Translate the participle.**
    - **Often as an "-ing" word, but sometimes as a finite verb.**
  - **Include the other elements of the participial phrase.**

- **E.g., "While she was quietly eating a big sandwich, Sue studied Greek."**
- **E.g., "While quietly eating a big sandwich, Sue studied Greek."**
- **E.g., "Because he was hungry, Joe ate a big sandwich."**

Translating Temporal Adverbial Participles

- **The <u>underlined words</u> translate the Greek participle (one word in Greek!).**

- **PAP: "<u>While Jesus was walking</u> beside the Sea of Galilee,…" (Mt 4:18)**
- **PMP: "And if you meet your enemy's ox <u>while it is leading itself astray</u>" (Ex 23:4)**
- **PPP: "<u>While</u> we <u>were being driven about</u> in the Adriatic…" (Ac 27:27)**

- **AAP: "<u>After hearing the king</u>, they traveled…" (Mt 2:9)**
- **APP: "<u>After being baptized</u>, Jesus came up…" (Mt 3:16)**

- **Alternately, you can translate temporal aorist participles using a pronoun and a finite verb ["<u>After they heard</u>," "<u>After he called to himself</u>," "<u>After he was baptized</u>."] This clarifies that the aspect is undefined rather than continuous, but obscures the participle nature.**

- **TAP: "Some… will not taste death until they behold the Kingdom of God <u>after it has come</u> with power." (Mk 9:1)**
- **TPP: "But everyone, <u>after he has been completely trained</u>, will be like his teacher." (Lk 6:40).**

- **TMP, FAP, FMP, FPP: No temporal uses in the GNT or LXX.**
- **AMP: Still looking for a needle in the haystack…**

Translating Present Adverbial Participles

- **Not always word-for-word**
  - **You may need to use multiple words in English to convey the meaning of a single Greek participle.**
  - **Figure out what the participle means, and then figure out how to express that meaning in English.**
  - **Be flexible in your translation.**

- **PAP: "While he was walking beside the Sea of Galilee,…" (Mt 4:18)**
- **PMP: "And if you meet your enemy's ox while it is leading itself astray" (Ex 23:4)**
- **PPP: "While we were being driven about in the Adriatic…" (Ac 27:27)**

- **May or may not need pronoun + helping verb**
  - **Pronoun refers to one doing/receiving action of participle.**
  - **E.g., PAP: "While walking beside the Sea of Galilee,…" (Mt 4:18)**

The GNC Only Affect Translation
If Translate Substantive Doing/Receiving Participle

- λύω as **PAPMSN, PAPFSN, PAPMPN, PAPMPG**
  - Can translate all as "while loosing"
  - If add substantive, then "while <u>he</u> was loosing," "while <u>she</u> was loosing," etc.

- Case clarifies relation to main clause.

- Case clarifies substantive doing/receiving action of participle.
  - E.g., "Joe kissed his son while sitting down."
    - If Joe is the one sitting down, the participle "sitting down" would be nominative.
    - If the son is the one sitting down, the participle "sitting down" would be accusative.

Practice Translating Present Adverbial Participles

- **E.g., λύω PAPMSN → "While he is loosing"**

- λύω **PAPFSN →**
- λύω **PAPNSN →**
- λύω **PAPMPN →**
- λύω **PMPMSN →**
- λύω **PPPMSN →**
- λύω **PAPFSA →**
- λύω **PAPNSD →**
- λύω **PAPMPG →**

Preview of Chapter 27: Present Adverbial Participles

1. **Present tense**

    –   **Present relative time + continuous aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**

    –   **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**

    –   **Translate "While Xing" or "While being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**

    –   **Never have article**

    –   **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming present participles**

5. **Parsing present participles**

Syntax of Adverbial Participles

- ➢ **What are the five uses of a participle?**
    - – **No article for adverbial participles.**
    - ➢ **What uses of participles can have an article?**

- • **GNC of participles match a noun**
    - – **Active voice:** **match GNC of noun doing action of participle**
    - – **Middle voice:** **match GNC of noun doing action of participle**
    - – **Deponent:** **match GNC of noun doing action of participle**
    - – **Passive:** **match GNC of noun receiving action of participle**

Preview of Chapter 27: Present Adverbial Participles

1. **Present tense**
   - **Present relative time + continuous aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   - **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   - **Translate "While Xing" or "While being Xed"**

3. Syntax
   - **Never have article**
   - **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming present participles**

5. **Parsing present participles**

Participle Formation Chart

- **Participle Master Pattern:**
  - **Redup? + <u>Tense Stem</u> + TF? + CV? + <u>Participle Morpheme</u> + <u>Case Ending</u>**

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		**Present**		ο	ντ	νσα
PMpP		**Present**		ο	μενο	μενη

Compare Participle Formation Chart
with Finite Verb Formation Chart

T&V	Aug	Red	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	PE
PAI			Present		o / ε	PA
PMpI			Present		o / ε	PM

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη

- **No augment column because never absolute past time**
- **CV is omicron, not o / ε**
- **No personal ending column because no person**
- **Add participle morpheme**
- **Add case ending (not on chart)**

Participle Formation Chart

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη

- **Reduplicate**
  - **If perfect aspect**
  - **Same as indicative**

- **Tense stems**
  - **Same as indicative**
  - **Same verbs 1st or 2nd aorist, etc**
  - **Same verbs deponent**

- **Tense formatives**
  - **Same T&V as indicative**
  - **Usually same as indicative**

- **Connecting vowel**
  - **Used in same tenses & voices as indicative**
  - **Always omicron**

- **Participle morpheme**
  - **Depends upon tense, voice, and gender**

- **Use case endings**

Participle Morpheme Sets Declension

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	TF	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ [3rd Declension]	νσα [1st Declension]
PMpP		Present		o	μενο [2nd Declension]	μενη [1st Declension]

- **Participle:**
  - **Redup? + Tense Stem + TF? + CV? + Participle Morpheme + Case Ending**

- **Participle morpheme**
  - **End of "stem"**
  - **Last thing before case ending**
  - **Sets declension**

Remember Case Ending Chart
With 3ʳᵈ Declension Rules

- **The M/F singular nominative case ending is sigma,**
  - Except nouns stems ending in ν, ρ, ς, and $o\nu\tau$ use no ending (-).
- **The M/F singular accusative case ending is alpha,**
  - Except noun stems ending in consonantal iota and digamma use nu.
  - 2-syllable <u>stems</u> ending in $\iota\tau$, $\iota\delta$, and $\iota\theta$ often drop the const & use nu.
- **The M/F plural accusative case ending is $\alpha\varsigma$,**
  - Except consonantal iota stems use $\epsilon\varsigma$ (the same as plural nominative).

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	**M**	**F**	**N**	**M&F**	**N**
singular nominative	ς	–	ν	ς / –	–
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	$o\varsigma$	$o\varsigma$
singular dative	ι sub	ι sub	ι sub	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	α / ν	–
plural nominative	ι	ι	<u>α</u>	$\epsilon\varsigma$	α
plural genitive	<u>$\omega\nu$</u>	<u>$\omega\nu$</u>	<u>$\omega\nu$</u>	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$
plural dative	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$
plural accusative	$\upsilon\varsigma$	ς	<u>α</u>	$\alpha\varsigma$ / $\epsilon\varsigma$	α

Practice Filling in the Case Ending Table

➢ **What sets the declension of a participle?**

➢ **What column is used by PAPM? PAPF? PAPN? PMpM? PMpF? PMpN?**

➢ **What are the rules for the boxes with two possibilities?**

➢ **What endings are used in present participles, given the rules?**

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	M	F	N	M & F	N
singular nominative					
singular genitive					
singular dative					
singular accusative					
singular vocative					
plural nom/voc					
plural genitive					
plural dative					
plural accusative					

Present Middle or Passive Participle of λύω

Eta switches to alpha in the plural, as usual.

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN		o	μενο	ς	-	ν	λυόμενος	λυομένη	λυόμενον
SG		o	M&N,	υ	ς	υ	λυομένου	λυομένης	λυομένου
SD		o	μενη	ι	ι	ι	λυομένῳ	λυομένῃ	λυομένῳ
SA		o	Fem	ν	ν	ν	λυόμενον	λυομένην	λυόμενον
PN		o	μενο	ι	ι	α	λυόμενοι	λυόμεναι	λυόμενα
PG		o	M&N,	ων	ων	ων	λυομένων	λυομένων	λυομένων
PD		o	μενα	ις	ις	ις	λυομένοις	λυομέναις	λυομένοις
PA		o	Fem	υς	ς	α	λυομένους	λυομένας	λυόμενα

Practice Inflecting
Present Middle or Passive Participle of λύω

- **What forms are ambiguous?**

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

Present Active Participle of λύω

νσα ➔ σα. **Lengthen preceding vowel to make up for nu lost before sigma.**

Alpha switches to eta in SG & SD

Words can't end with tau, so tau drops off. Lengthen vowel in M, but not N.

Blank MSN PE because preceded by οντ.

	TF	CV	PM	MCE	FCE	NCE	M	F	N
SN	ε		ντ /νσα	ς	–	–	λύων	λύουσα	λῦον
SG	ε		ντ /νση	ος	ς	ος	λύοντος	λυούσης	λύοντος
SD	ε		ντ /νση	ι	ι	ι	λύοντι	λυούσῃ	λύοντι
SA	ε		ντ /νσα	α	ν	–	λύοντα	λύουσαν	λῦον
PN	ε		ντ /νσα	ες	ι	α	λύοντες	λύουσαι	λύοντα
PG	ε		ντ /νσα	ων	ων	ων	λυόντων	λυουσῶν	λυόντων
PD	ε		ντ /νσα	σι(ν)	ις	σι(ν)	λύουσι(ν)	λυούσαις	λύουσι(ν)
PA	ε		ντ /νσα	ας	ς	α	λύοντας	λυούσας	λύοντα

ντ **drops out before sigma. Lengthen preceding vowel to compensate.**

Practice Inflecting Present Active Participle of λύω

- **Why that MSN case ending?**
- **When do alpha and eta switch?**
- **When do letters drop out?**

- **When do vowels lengthen?**
- **What tense stem do we use?**
- **What forms are ambiguous?**

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

Memorize the Present Participle of εἰμί

- **Active in form. Some say it is active voice. I say it doesn't have a voice.**
- **There are no other participle forms of εἰμί. The present is it.**
- **Translate it as "being."**

	M	F	N
SN	ὤν	οὖσα	ὄν
SG	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
SD	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
SA	ὄντα	οὖσαν	ὄν
PN	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα
PG	ὄντων	οὐσῶν	ὄντων
PD	οὖσι(ν)	οὔσαις	οὖσι(ν)
PA	ὄντας	οὔσας	ὄντα

Preview of Chapter 27: Present Adverbial Participles

1. **Present tense**
   - **Present relative time + continuous aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   - **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   - **Translate "While Xing" or "While being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   - **Never have article**
   - **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming present participles**

5. **Parsing present participles**

Parsing Present Participles

- **Form independent of function**
  - – **A present participle looks same whether adverbial or attributive.**
  - – **Meaning of inflected form depends on function.**

- **Things to notice:**
  1. **Form of present tense stem + No augment + No reduplication + No TF + CV is omicron → Present tense stem**
  2. **Present tense stem + participle morpheme + case ending → Present participle**
  3. **Participle morpheme → Voice and Gender**
  4. **Case ending → Gender, Number, and Case**

- **Example: λύοντα**
  1. **λυ is present tense stem. No augment, reduplication, or TF. Followed by CV omicron. → Present tense stem**
  2. **Has present tense stem λυ + participle morpheme ντ + case ending alpha → present participle**
  3. **Participle morpheme ντ → masculine or neuter, active voice.**
  4. **Case ending alpha → MSA or NPNa**

Practice Parsing Present Participles
1

- **Identify augment, tense stem, tense formative, connecting vowel, participle morpheme, and case ending. Then parse.**
- **E.g., λύοντα,**
  - **No augment. Tense stem is λυ. No tense formative. CV is omicron. Participle morpheme is ντ. Case ending is alpha.**
  - **from λύω, PAPMSA "while he is loosing" or PAPNPNa "while they are loosing"**

- λυόμενος
- λυομένου
- λυομένῳ
- λυόμενον
- λυόμενοι
- λυομένων
- λυομένοις
- λυομένους
- λυόμενον
- λυόμενα

Practice Parsing Present Participles
2

- **Identify augment, tense stem, tense formative, connecting vowel, participle morpheme, and case ending. Then parse.**
- **E.g., λύοντα,**
  - **No augment. Tense stem is λυ. No tense formative. CV is omicron. Participle morpheme is ντ. Case ending is alpha.**
  - **from λύω, PAPMSA "while he is loosing" or PAPNPNa "while they are loosing"**

- λυομένη
- λυομένης
- λυομένῃ
- λυομένην
- λυόμεναι
- λυομένων
- λυομέναις
- λυομένας

Practice Parsing Present Participles
3

- **Identify augment, tense stem, tense formative, connecting vowel, participle morpheme, and case ending. Then parse.**

- **E.g., λύοντα,**
  - **No augment. Tense stem is λυ. No tense formative. CV is omicron. Participle morpheme is ντ. Case ending is alpha.**
  - **from λύω, PAPMSA "while he is loosing" or PAPNPNa "while they are loosing"**

- λύοντος
- λύοντι
- λύοντες
- λυόντων
- λύοντας
- λύουσι
- λύουσιν
- λύων
- λῦον
- λύοντος

**Practice Parsing Present Participles
4**

- **Identify augment, tense stem, tense formative, connecting vowel, participle morpheme, and case ending. Then parse.**
- **E.g., λύοντα,**
  - **No augment. Tense stem is λυ. No tense formative. CV is omicron. Participle morpheme is ντ. Case ending is alpha.**
  - **from λύω, PAPMSA "while he is loosing" or PAPNPNa "while they are loosing"**

- **λύουσα**
- **λυούσης**
- **λυούσῃ**
- **λύουσαν**
- **λύουσαι**
- **λυουσῶν**
- **λυούσαις**
- **λυούσας**

Review of Chapter 27: Present Adverbial Participles

1. **Present tense**
   - **Present relative time + continuous aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   - **Temporal adverbial participles are a subset of adverbial participles**
   - **Translate "While Xing" or "While being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   - **Never have article**
   - **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming present participles**

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		**Present**		o	ντ	νσα
PMpP		**Present**		o	μενο	μενη

Preview of Chapter 28: Aorist Adverbial Participles

1. **Aorist tense**
   – **Past relative time + undefined aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   – **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   – **Translate "After Xing" or "After being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   – **Never have article**
   – **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming aorist participles**

5. **Parsing aorist participles**

Participle Tense Indicates Aspect & Relative Time.
Chapter 28 Covers Aorist Participles.

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	**Aorist Participle**	**(Aorist Participle)**	**Future Participle**
Continuous Aspect		**Present Participle**	
Perfect Aspect	**Perfect Participle?**	**Perfect Participle?**	

- **Past relative time**
  - **Before the time of the main verb.**
  - **E.g., "After you wake up, start praying."**

- **Present relative time**
  - **Sometimes if main verb is aorist.**
  - **Same time as the main verb**
  - **E.g., "While she prayed, God listened to her."**

- **Undefined aspect.**

Preview of Chapter 28: Aorist Adverbial Participles

1. **Aorist tense**
   - **Past relative time + undefined aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   - **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   - **Translate "After Xing" or "After being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   - **Never have article**
   - **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming aorist participles**

5. **Parsing aorist participles**

Participles Have Same Uses As Adjectives.
Chapters 27 & 28 Cover Adverbial Use

- **Four uses of adjectives:**
  - **Attributive [e.g., The tall woman]**
  - **Predicate [e.g., The woman is tall.]**
  - **Substantival [e.g., The good, the bad, and the ugly all need Jesus.]**
  - **Adverbial [e.g., It works good.]**

- **Same four uses for participles:**
  - **Attributive [e.g., The living woman]**
  - **Predicate [e.g., The woman is living.]**
  - **Substantival [e.g., The living need Jesus.]**
  - **Adverbial [e.g., It works while falling.]** ← *Chapters 27 & 28*

- **One other use for participles:**
  - **Independent verb [e.g., He is living.]**
    - **Very rare**

Many Types of Adverbial Participles.
Chapters 27 & 28 Cover Temporal Adverbial

- **Adverbial participles:**
  - **Answer when, why, or how about the independent verb.**
    - **When? Temporal** ← *Chapters 27 & 28*
    - **Why? Purpose, Result, Concession, Condition, Cause**
    - **How? Manner, Means**

- **Other semi-adverbial participles (See Wallace for details):**
  - **Attendant circumstance**
  - **Indirect discourse**
  - **Complementary: "Continue <u>sitting</u>."**
  - **Periphrastic**
  - **Redundant: "Jesus <u>answered and</u> said"**

- **Distinguished mostly by context. Wallace gives additional clues.**

Translating Adverbial Participles

- **To translate an adverbial participial phrase:**
  - **Key word indicates use:**
    - **Before, while, after, because, in order to, even though, etc.**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving participle:**
    - **If substantive is explicit in the Greek, translate it.**
    - **If not, may or may not add it.**
      - **E.g., "After he was going …"**
      - **E.g., "After going…"**
  - **Translate the participle.**
    - **Often as an "-ing" word, but sometimes as a finite verb.**
    - **May need English helper verb to indicate relative time or aspect.**
  - **Include the other elements of the participial phrase.**

- **E.g., "After she was quietly eating a big sandwich, Sue studied Greek."**
- **E.g., "After quietly eating a big sandwich, Sue studied Greek."**
- **E.g., "Because he was hungry, Joe ate a big sandwich."**

The GNC Only Affect Translation
If Translate Substantive Doing/Receiving Participle

- λύω as AAPMSN, AAPFSN, AAPMPN, AAPMPG
  - "after loosing"
  - May add pronoun:
    - If needed to clarify one doing/receiving action of participle.
    - "after <u>he</u> was loosing," "after <u>she</u> was loosing," etc.
  - May translate as a finite verb
    - Communicates the aspect
    - Loses participle nature.
    - "after he loosed," "after she loosed," etc.

- Case clarifies relation to main clause.

- Case clarifies substantive doing/receiving action of participle.
  - E.g., "<u>After he sat down</u>, Joe kissed his son."
    - "After he sat down" is a participle (1 word) in Greek.
    - The participle has a case ending.
      - Nominative case ➔ Joe is the one who sat down.
      - Accusative case ➔ Joe's son is the one who sat down.

Translating Temporal Adverbial Participles

- **The <u>underlined words</u> translate the Greek participle (one word in Greek!).**

- **AAP: "<u>After hearing</u> the king, they traveled…" (Mt 2:9)**
- **AMP: Still looking for a needle in the haystack…**
- **APP: "<u>After being baptized</u>, Jesus came up…" (Mt 3:16)**

- **Alternately, you can translate temporal aorist participles using a pronoun and a finite verb**
  - **AAP: "<u>After they heard</u> the king, they traveled…" (Mt 2:9)**
  - **APP: "<u>After he was baptized</u>, Jesus came up…" (Mt 3:16)**
  - **This clarifies that the aspect is undefined rather than continuous.**
  - **This obscures the participle nature.**

Practice Translating Aorist Adverbial Participles

- **E.g., λύω AAPMSN → "After loosing" or "After he loosed"**

- λύω **AAPFSN →**
- λύω **AAPNSN →**
- λύω **AAPMPN →**
- λύω **AMPMSN →**
- λύω **APPMSN →**
- λύω **AAPFSA →**
- λύω **AAPNSD →**
- λύω **AAPMPG →**

Preview of Chapter 28: Aorist Adverbial Participles

1. **Aorist tense**
   - **Past relative time + undefined aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   - **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   - **Translate "After Xing" or "After being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   - **Never have article**
   - **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming aorist participles**

5. **Parsing aorist participles**

Syntax of Adverbial Participles

➢ **What are the five uses of a participle?**

    – **No article for adverbial participles.**

    ➢ **What uses of participles can have an article?**

• **GNC of all participles match a noun**

    – **Active voice:**   **match GNC of noun doing action of participle**

    – **Middle voice:**   **match GNC of noun doing action of participle**

    – **Deponent:**   **match GNC of noun doing action of participle**

    – **Passive:**   **match GNC of noun receiving action of participle**

Preview of Chapter 28: Aorist Adverbial Participles

1. **Aorist tense**
   – **Past relative time + undefined aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   – **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   – **Translate "After Xing" or "After being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   – **Never have article**
   – **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming aorist participles**

5. **Parsing aorist participles**

Participle Formation Chart

- **How to form a participle:**
  - **Reduplicate front of tense stem if needed.**
  - **Always tense stem.**
  - **Tense formative and connecting vowel follow tense stem if needed.**
  - **Participle morpheme always next**
  - **Always case ending at end.**

- **Master pattern:**
  - **Redup? + Tense Stem + TF? + CV? + Participle Morpheme + Case Ending**

Tense & Voice	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Masc & Neut PM	Fem PM

Compare Participle Formation Chart
with Finite Verb Formation Chart

T&V	Aug	Red	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	PE
PAI			Present		o / ε	PA
PMpI			Present		o / ε	PM

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη

- **No augment column because never absolute past time**
- **CV is omicron, not o / ε**
- **No personal ending column because no person**
- **Add participle morpheme**
- **Add case ending (not on chart)**

Participle Formation Chart

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη

- **Reduplicate if perfect aspect**

- **Tense stems**
  - **Same as indicative**
  - **Same verbs 1st or 2nd aorist, etc**
  - **Same verbs deponent**

- **Tense formatives**
  - **Same T&V as indicative**
  - **Usually same as indicative**

- **Connecting vowel**
  - **Use unless:**
    - **TF ends in a vowel**
    - **Perfect or Pluperfect**
  - **Always omicron for participles**

- **Participle morpheme**
  - **Depends upon tense, voice, and gender**

- **Use case endings**

- **Aorist Passive always Active form**

Participle Morpheme Sets Declension.

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	TF	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ [3rd Declension]	νσα [1st Declension]
PMpP		Present		o	μενο [2nd Declension]	μενη [1st Declension]

- **Participle:**
  - **Redup? + Tense Stem + TF? + CV? + Participle Morpheme + Case Ending**

- **Participle morpheme**
  - **End of "stem"**
  - **Last thing before case ending**
  - **Sets declension**

Remember 1ˢᵗ Declension Feminine Alpha / Eta Swaps.

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	TF	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα (νση SG & SD)
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη (μενα Plural)

- **Rule (chapter 8)**
  - **Stem ending in alpha ➔ eta in SG & SD unless preceded by ε, ι, or ρ.**
  - νσα ➔ νση **in SG & SD**

- **Rule (chapter 6)**
  - **Feminine ending in eta ➔ alpha in plural.**
  - μενη ➔ μενα **in plural**

1ˢᵗ Aorist As Expected
Except Passive Tense Formative

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
1AAP		Aorist Active	σα [Liquid α]		ντ	νσα
1APP		Aorist Passive	θε		ντ	νσα
1AMP		Aorist Active	σα [Liquid α]		μενο	μενη

- **Same as aorist indicative:**
  - **No reduplication**
  - **Same tense stem**
  - **Same tense formative**
    - **Aorist passive uses θε (indicative uses θη)**
  - **No connecting vowel**

- **Same participle morphemes as present**
  - **Aorist passive uses active morphemes**
    - **Just like aorist passive indicative uses active personal endings.**

2nd Aorist As Expected
Except Passive Tense Formative

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
2AAP		**Aorist Active**		o	ντ	νσα
2APP		**Aorist Passive**	ε		ντ	νσα
2AMP		**Aorist Active**		o	μενο	μενη

- **Same as aorist indicative:**
  - **No reduplication**
  - **Same tense stem**
  - **No tense formative active & middle**
    - **2nd Aorist passive uses ε (indicative uses η)**
  - **Connecting vowel in active & middle**
    - **CV is omicron, not o / ε**

- **Same participle morphemes as present**
  - **Aorist passive uses active morphemes**
    - **Just like aorist passive indicative uses active personal endings.**

Tense Stem Alone Distinguishes 2ⁿᵈ Aorist from Present in Active & Middle Participles

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα
2AAP		Aorist Active		o	ντ	νσα
2APP		Aorist Passive	ε		ντ	νσα
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη
2AMP		Aorist Active		o	μενο	μενη

➢ **What 3 things distinguish 2AAI from PAI?**

➢ **What happens to 2 of those 3 things in participles?**

➢ **What 1 thing distinguishes 2AAP from PAP?**

➢ **What 3 things distinguish 2AMI from PMpI?**

➢ **What happens to 2 of those 3 things in participles?**

➢ **What 1 thing distinguishes 2AMP from PMpP?**

Rules for Constructing Formation Charts

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		**Present**		o	ντ	νσα
2AAP		**Aorist Active**		o	ντ	νσα
1AAP		**Aorist Active**	σα [Liquid α]		ντ	νσα
1APP		**Aorist Passive**	θε		ντ	νσα
2APP		**Aorist Passive**	ε		ντ	νσα
PMpP		**Present**		o	μενο	μενη
2AMP		**Aorist Active**		o	μενο	μενη
1AMP		**Aorist Active**	σα [Liquid α]		μενο	μενη

- **Reduplicate if perfect aspect.**
- **Always same tense stems as indicative.**
- **Usually same tense formatives as indicative.**
  - **Tense formative of 2ⁿᵈ same as 1ˢᵗ, but drop initial letter. [E.g. θε ➜ ε]**
    - **1ˢᵗ aorist active and middle is exception to the rule.**
- **CV unless TF ends in vowel (or unless perfect or pluperfect)**
- **Aorist passive always formed like active voice**

Practice Filling in Participle Formation Chart

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP						
2AAP						
1AAP						
APP						
PMpP						
2AMP						
1AMP						

Remember Case Ending Chart
With 3rd Declension Rules

- **The M/F singular nominative case ending is sigma,**
  - **Except nouns stems ending in ν, ρ, ς, and $o\nu\tau$ use no ending (-).**
- **The M/F singular accusative case ending is alpha,**
  - **Except noun stems ending in consonantal iota and digamma use nu.**
  - **2-syllable <u>stems</u> ending in $\iota\tau$, $\iota\delta$, and $\iota\theta$ often drop the const & use nu.**
- **The M/F plural accusative case ending is $\alpha\varsigma$,**
  - **Except consonantal iota stems use $\epsilon\varsigma$ (the same as plural nominative).**

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	**M**	**F**	**N**	**M&F**	**N**
singular nominative	ς	$-$	ν	$\varsigma\,/\,-$	$-$
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	$o\varsigma$	$o\varsigma$
singular dative	ι sub	ι sub	ι sub	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	$\alpha\,/\,\nu$	$-$
plural nominative	ι	ι	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\epsilon\varsigma$	α
plural genitive	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\underline{\omega}\nu$	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$
plural dative	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$
plural accusative	$\upsilon\varsigma$	ς	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\alpha\varsigma\,/\,\epsilon\varsigma$	α

1st Aorist Middle Participle of λύω

- **What forms are ambiguous?**

> Eta switches to alpha in the plural, as usual.

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN	σα		μενο	ς	-	ν	λυσάμενος	λυσαμένη	λυσάμενον
SG	σα		**M&N,**	υ	ς	υ	λυσαμένου	λυσαμένης	λυσαμένου
SD	σα		μενη	ι	ι	ι	λυσαμένῳ	λυσαμένῃ	λυσαμένῳ
SA	σα		**Fem**	ν	ν	ν	λυσάμενον	λυσαμένην	λυσάμενον
PN	σα		μενο	ι	ι	α	λυσάμενοι	λυσάμεναι	λυσάμενα
PG	σα		**M&N,**	ων	ων	ων	λυσαμένων	λυσαμένων	λυσαμένων
PD	σα		μενα	ις	ις	ις	λυσαμένοις	λυσαμέναις	λυσαμένοις
PA	σα		**Fem**	υς	ς	α	λυσαμένους	λυσαμένας	λυσάμενα

28.4

Practice Inflecting
1st Aorist Middle Participle of λύω

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

2nd Aorist Middle Participle of βάλλω
Same as Present Middle, Except For Stem Change.

- **What forms are ambiguous?**

Eta switches to alpha in the plural, as usual.

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN		ο	μενο	ς	-	ν	βαλόμενος	βαλομένη	βαλόμενον
SG		ο	**M&N,**	υ	ς	υ	βαλομένου	βαλομένης	βαλομένου
SD		ο	μενη	ι	ι	ι	βαλομένῳ	βαλομένῃ	βαλομένῳ
SA		ο	**Fem**	ν	ν	ν	βαλόμενον	βαλομένην	βαλόμενον
PN		ο	μενο	ι	ι	α	βαλόμενοι	βαλόμεναι	βαλόμενα
PG		ο	**M&N,**	ων	ων	ων	βαλομένων	βαλομένων	βαλομένων
PD		ο	μενα	ις	ις	ις	βαλομένοις	βαλομέναις	βαλομένοις
PA		ο	**Fem**	υς	ς	α	βαλομένους	βαλομένας	βαλόμενα

Practice Inflecting
2nd Aorist Middle Participle of βάλλω

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

1st Aorist Active Participle of λύω

MSN 3rd declension PE is sigma unless preceded by ν, ρ, σ, or οντ.

MSN uses sigma. ντ drops out before sigma.

Words can't end with tau, so tau drops off NSNa

Alpha switches to eta in SG & SD

	T F	C V	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN	σα		ντ / νσα	ς	–	–	λύσας	λύσασα	λῦσαν
SG	σα		ντ / νση	ος	ς	ος	λύσαντος	λυσάσης	λύσαντος
SD	σα		ντ / νση	ι	ι	ι	λύσαντι	λυσάσῃ	λύσαντι
SA	σα		ντ / νσα	α	ν	–	λύσαντα	λύσασαν	λῦσαν
PN	σα		ντ / νσα	ες	ι	α	λύσαντες	λύσασαι	λύσαντα
PG	σα		ντ / νσα	ων	ων	ων	λυσάντων	λυσασῶν	λυσάντων
PD	σα		ντ / νσα	σι(ν)	ις	σι(ν)	λύσασι(ν)	λυσάσαις	λύσασι(ν)
PA	σα		ντ / νσα	ας	ς	α	λύσαντας	λυσάσας	λύσαντα

ντ drops out before sigma.

Practice Inflecting 1st Aorist Active Participle of λύω

- **Why that MSN case ending?**
- **When do alpha and eta switch?**
- **When do letters drop out?**

- **When do vowels lengthen?**
- **Do we augment? Why or why not?**
- **What tense stem do we use?**

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

2nd Aorist Active Participle of βάλλω
Same as Present Active, Except For Stem Change.

Words can't end with tau, so tau drops off MSN and NSNa.
Lengthen to compensate in MSN, but not NSNa.

Blank MSN PE because preceded by οντ.

Alpha switches to eta in SG & SD

	T F	C V	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N		M	F	N
SN		ο	ντ / νσα	–	–	–		βαλών	βαλοῦσα	βαλόν
SG		ο	ντ / νση	ος	ς	ος		βαλόντος	βαλούσης	βαλόντος
SD		ο	ντ / νση	ι	ι	ι		βαλόντι	βαλούσῃ	βαλόντι
SA		ο	ντ / νσα	α	ν	–		βαλόντα	βαλοῦσαν	βαλόν
PN		ο	ντ / νσα	ες	ι	α		βάλοντες	βάλουσαι	βάλοντα
PG		ο	ντ / νσα	ων	ων	ων		βαλόντων	βαλουσῶν	βαλόντων
PD		ο	ντ / νσα	σι(ν)	ις	σι(ν)		βάλουσι(ν)	βαλούσαις	βάλουσι(ν)
PA		ο	ντ / νσα	ας	ς	α		βάλοντας	βαλούσας	βάλοντα

ντ or nu drops out before sigma. Lengthen preceding vowel to compensate.

Practice Inflecting 2nd Aorist Active Participle of βάλλω

- **Why that MSN case ending?**
- **When do alpha and eta switch?**
- **When do letters drop out?**

- **When do vowels lengthen?**
- **Do we augment? Why or why not?**
- **What tense stem do we use?**

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

1st Aorist Passive Participle of λύω
Uses θε as TF (vs. θη in Indicative)

MSN 3rd declension PE is sigma unless preceded by ν, ρ, σ, or οντ.

MSN uses sigma. ντ drops out before sigma. Lengthen to compensate.

Words can't end with tau, so tau drops off NSNa

Alpha switches to eta in SG & SD

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN	θε		ντ / νσα	ς	–	–	λυθείς	λυθεῖσα	λυθέν
SG	θε		ντ / νση	ος	ς	ος	λυθέντος	λυθείσης	λυθέντος
SD	θε		ντ / νση	ι	ι	ι	λυθέντι	λυθείσῃ	λυθέντι
SA	θε		ντ / νσα	α	ν	–	λυθέντα	λυθεῖσαν	λυθέν
PN	θε		ντ / νσα	ες	ι	α	λυθέντες	λυθεῖσαι	λυθέντα
PG	θε		ντ / νσα	ων	ων	ων	λυθέντων	λυθεισῶν	λυθέντων
PD	θε		ντ / νσα	σι(ν)	ις	σι(ν)	λυθεῖσι(ν)	λυθείσαις	λυθεῖσι(ν)
PA	θε		ντ / νσα	ας	ς	α	λυθέντας	λυθείσας	λυθέντα

ντ or nu drops out before sigma. Lengthen vowel to compensate.

Practice Inflecting 1st Aorist Passive Participle of λύω

- **Why that MSN case ending?**
- **When do alpha and eta switch?**
- **When do letters drop out?**

- **When do vowels lengthen?**
- **Do we augment? Why or why not?**
- **What tense stem do we use?**

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

28.4 **2nd Aorist Passive Participle of** γράφω
Same as 1st Aorist Passive, Except no Theta in TF.

MSN 3rd declension PE is sigma unless preceded by ν, ρ, σ, or οντ.

MSN uses sigma. ντ drops out before sigma. Lengthen to compensate.

Alpha switches to eta in SG & SD

Words can't end with tau, so tau drops off NSNa

	TF	CV	PM	MCE	FCE	NCE	M	F	N
SN	ε		ντ /νσα	ς	–	–	γραφείς	γραφεῖσα	γραφέν
SG	ε		ντ /νση	ος	ς	ος	γραφέντος	γραφείσης	γραφέντος
SD	ε		ντ /νση	ι	ι	ι	γραφέντι	γραφείσῃ	γραφέντι
SA	ε		ντ /νσα	α	ν	–	γραφέντα	γραφεῖσαν	γραφέν
PN	ε		ντ /νσα	ες	ι	α	γραφέντες	γραφεῖσαι	γραφέντα
PG	ε		ντ /νσα	ων	ων	ων	γραφέντων	γραφεισῶν	γραφέντων
PD	ε		ντ /νσα	σι(ν)	ις	σι(ν)	γραφεῖσι(ν)	γραφείσαις	γραφεῖσι(ν)
PA	ε		ντ /νσα	ας	ς	α	γραφέντας	γραφείσας	γραφέντα

ντ or nu drops out before sigma. Lengthen vowel to compensate.

Practice Inflecting 2nd Aorist Passive Participle of γράφω

- **Why that MSN case ending?**
- **When do alpha and eta switch?**
- **When do letters drop out?**

- **When do vowels lengthen?**
- **Do we augment? Why or why not?**
- **What tense stem do we use?**

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

Preview of Chapter 28: Aorist Adverbial Participles

1. **Aorist tense**
   - **Past relative time + undefined aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   - **Subset of 1 of the 5 uses**
   - **Translate "After Xing" or "After being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   - **Never have article**
   - **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

4. **Forming aorist participles**

5. **Parsing aorist participles**

Practice Parsing Aorist Participles 1

- **Identify augment, reduplication, tense stem, tense formative, connecting vowel, participle morpheme, and case ending. Then parse. Then give present participle.**
- **E.g., λύσαντα,**
    - **No augment. No reduplication.**
      Tense stem is λυ. Tense formative is σα. No CV.
      Participle morpheme is ντ. Case ending is alpha.
    - **From λύω, AAPMSA "after loosing" or "after he looses"**
      or AAPNPNa "after loosing" or "after they loose"
    - **PAPMSA is λύοντα**

- λυσάμενος
- λυσαμένας
- λύσαντος
- λύσας
- λύσασαι
- λυθέντες
- λυθείς
- λυθεῖσι
- λυθεῖσαι
- λυθέντα

Practice Parsing Aorist Participles
2

- **Identify augment, reduplication, tense stem, tense formative, connecting vowel, participle morpheme, and case ending. Then parse. Then give present participle.**
- **E.g., λύσαντα,**
    - **No augment. No reduplication.**
      Tense stem is λυ. Tense formative is σα. No CV.
      Participle morpheme is ντ. Case ending is alpha.
    - **From λύω, AAPMSA "after loosing" or "after he looses"**
      or AAPNPNa "after loosing" or "after they loose"
    - **PAPMSA is λύοντα**

- βαλόμενος
- βαλομένας
- βαλόντος
- βαλούσας
- βάλουσαι
- γραφέντες
- γραφείς
- γραφεῖσι
- γραφεῖσαι
- γραφέντα

Review of Chapter 28: Aorist Adverbial Participles

1. **Aorist tense**
   – **Past relative time + undefined aspect**

2. **Use & Translation**
   – **Translate "After Xing" or "After being Xed"**

3. **Syntax**
   – **Never have article**
   – **GNC matches substantive doing/receiving participle**

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		**Present**		ο	ντ	νσα
2AAP		**Aorist Active**		ο	ντ	νσα
1AAP		**Aorist Active**	σα [Liquid α]		ντ	νσα
APP		**Aorist Passive**	θε [2nd ε]		ντ	νσα
PMpP		**Present**		ο	μενο	μενη
2AMP		**Aorist Active**		ο	μενο	μενη
1AMP		**Aorist Active**	σα [Liquid α]		μενο	μενη

Participles Can Function Like Adjectives or Adverbs

- **Like adjectives, participles can function in four ways:**
  - **Attributive, Predicate, Substantival, or Adverbial.**

- **Adverbial participles (one type):**
  - **"After <u>rising</u> from the dead, Jesus proved that He was alive."**
  - **The participle "rising" tells something about when the main verb "proved" took place.**

- **Adjectival participles (three types):**
  - **Attributive**
    - **"Jesus saves <u>believing</u> girls."**
  - **Predicate**
    - **"The girl is <u>believing</u>."**
  - **Substantival**
    - **"The <u>believing</u> have been reborn."**

Practice Identifying Participles and their Functions

- **What are the four ways that participles can function?**

- **Identify the following English participles and their functions:**
  - **[After] rising from the dead, Jesus proved that He was alive.**
  - **Jesus saves believing girls.**
  - **The girl is believing.**
  - **The believing have been reborn.**
  - **Jesus emptied himself by taking on the form of a servant.**
  - **Jesus promised to give us living water.**
  - **Living is the word of God and active.**
  - **All the believing in Him will not perish but have eternal life.**
  - **Judas was a guide to [those who were] arresting Jesus.**
  - **[After] fasting, Jesus became hungry.**
  - **Humble yourselves [by] casting your cares on Him.**
  - **Having eyes, do you not see?**

Examples from Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*

Context Determines the Function of A Participle

- The form of a participle depends only on its parsing
  (Parsing = Lexical form, tense, "participle," voice, gender, number, case, meaning).

- The form of a participle is independent of its function
  - adverbial, attributive, predicate, substantival, or independent verb.

- Does the participle have an article?
  - No ➔ Can be any of the four functions.
  - Yes ➔ Substantival or attributive. Can't be adverbial or predicate.

- Does the participle modify the substantive that it agrees with in gender, number, and case?
  - No ➔ Adverbial or Substantive
  - Yes ➔ Attributive or Predicate

Example of Determining the Type of Participle

- εὐλογημένος ὁ ἐρχόμενος ἐν ὀνόματι κυρίου (**Matt 21:9**)
- εὐλογημένος **is a TMpPMSN**
- εὐλογημένος **agrees in GNC with** ὁ ἐρχόμενος
- εὐλογημένος **does not have an article but** ὁ ἐρχόμενος **does,**
  so if εὐλογημένος **is an adjectival participle modifying** ὁ ἐρχόμενος**, then it is a predicate adjectival participle and not an attributive participle.**
- **Translating it as an adverbial participle doesn't make much sense:**
  "<u>After having been blessed</u>, **the one coming in the name of the Lord.**"
- **Trying to translate it as a substantival participle yields**
  "<u>The blessed one</u>, **the one coming in the name of the Lord.**"
  - **This makes sense, but ends up modifying "the one coming," so we weren't successful in making a substantival participle.**
- **Since the participle is right next to a noun with which it agrees, we'll try to translate it as a predicate adjectival participle:**
  "<u>Blessed</u> *is* **the one coming in the name of the Lord.**" **This fits.**

- **Translate substantival participles using a "X who Y"**
  - **The X depends on the gender, number, and context (man, men, woman, women, one, ones, people,...)**
  - **The Y depends on the tense ("is -ing" for present, "-ed" for aorist).**
    - **<u>The one who is praying</u> is my wife.**
    - **<u>The one who prayed</u> is my wife.**

- **Often use a relative clause: The X who Y.**
  - **"The" or "Those" translates the article.**
  - **X communicates the gender and number.**
    - **X = "one," "he," "she," "things," etc.**
  - **Y translates the verb, tense, and voice.**
- **Aspect and relative time often lost in translation.**

- **PAP: "Blessed are those <u>who mourn</u>." (Mt 5:4)**
- **PPP: "Eat <u>what is put before</u> you." (Lk 10:8)**
- **AAP: "The <u>one who has lost</u> his life for My sake will find it." (Mt 10:39)**
- **APP: "Where is <u>he who was born</u> king of the Jews?" (Mt 2:2)**
- **TAP: "And they went out to see <u>what had happened</u>" (Lk 8:35)**
- **TPP: "Blessed are those <u>who have been persecuted</u>" (Mt 5:10)**
- **FAP: "Who is the <u>one who will condemn</u>?" (Rom 8:34)**
- **FPP: "A witness of those <u>things which would be spoken later</u>." (Heb 3:5)**

Translating Attributive Adjectival Participles

- Translate as a normal adjective if you can. "The <u>living</u> stone"

- Translate as "the one X" if you must. "The <u>one called</u> Peter."

- Translating as a relative clause often is the only way to communicate the aspect and relative time. "The <u>one who is being called</u> Peter."

- PAP: "They disclosed the word <u>which had been told</u> to them" (Lk 2:17)

- PPP: "He saw… Simon, <u>who is called</u> Peter" (Mt 4:18)

- AAP: "Even the dust <u>which attached itself</u> to our feet" (Lk 10:11)

- APP: "The robbers <u>who had been crucified</u> with him" (Mt 27:44)

- TAP: "Go to the <u>lost</u> sheep" (Mt 10:6)

- TAP: "Peter remembered the word <u>which</u> Jesus <u>had said</u>" (Mt 26:75)

- TPP: "Satan takes away the word <u>which has been sown</u>" (Mk 4:15)

- FAP: None in NT or LXX

- FPP: "Children <u>that would be born</u>" (Ps 78:6 / 77:6 LXX)

Preview of Chapter 30:
Perfect Participles & Participle Miscellanies

1. **Perfect tense**
   - **Past/Present Relative Time + Perfect Aspect**
   - **Translation**

2. **Form Perfect Participles**

3. **Parse Perfect Participles**

4. **Genitive Absolute Participles**

5. **Periphrastic Participles**

30.1 Participle Tense Indicates Aspect & Relative Time.
Chapter 30 Covers Perfect Participles.

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Participle	(Aorist Participle)	Future Participle
Continuous Aspect		Present Participle	
Perfect Aspect	Perfect Participle?	Perfect Participle?	

- **Perfect aspect.**

- **Relative time**
  - **Past or Present relative time?**
    - **Wallace calls it past.**
    - **I think it is present state from past action.**
  - **"Having risen from the dead, Jesus is alive forevermore."**
  - **Present State at the time of the main verb**
  - **Results from an action that was completed before the time of the main verb.**

Translating Perfect Participles

- **Since English doesn't have exact equivalents to perfect tense or to Greek participles, your translation may need to be creative.**

- **Attributive:**
  - τὰ πρόβατα τὰ ἀπολωλότα **"The lost sheep" (Mat 10:6)**
  - **The sheep are still lost after having wandered off some time ago.**
- **Predicate:**
  - οὐδὲν ἐστιν κεκαλυμμένον **"Nothing is concealed" (Mat 10:26)**
  - **Nothing is currently invisible due to someone having hidden it.**
- **Substantival:**
  - τὸ ἐσπαρμένον **"That which was sown" (Mat 13:19)**
  - **The thing is on the ground because someone sowed it in the past.**
- **Adverbial (temporal):**
  - Συνηγμένων δὲ τῶν Φθρισαίων **"After the Pharisees had gathered together" (Matt 22:41).**
  - **The main verb occurs while the Pharisees were in a gathered state after having finished gathering themselves together.**

Preview of Chapter 30:
Perfect Participles & Participle Miscellanies

1. **Perfect tense**
   – **Past/Present Relative Time + Perfect Aspect**
   – **Translation**

2. **Form Perfect Participles**

3. **Parse Perfect Participles**

4. **Genitive Absolute Participles**

5. **Periphrastic Participles**

Participle Formation Chart

- **Tense formative differs from indicative:**
  - **1TAP uses kappa [indicative uses κα].**
  - **2TAP uses nothing [indicative uses alpha] {1ˢᵗ TF ➔ drop 1ˢᵗ letter ➔ 2ⁿᵈ TF}**
  - **No TF in TMp, as always.**
- **No connecting vowel for perfect tense, as usual.**
- **Different PM for TAP than other active participles.**

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	ντ	νσα
2AAP		Aorist Active		o	ντ	νσα
1AAP		Aorist Active	σα [Liquid α]		ντ	νσα
1APP		Aorist Passive	θε		ντ	νσα
2APP		Aorist Passive	ε		ντ	νσα
1TAP	X	Perfect Active	κ		οτ	υια
2TAP	X	Perfect Active			οτ	υια
PMpP		Present		o	μενο	μενη
2AMP		Aorist Active		o	μενο	μενη
1AMP		Aorist Active	σα [Liquid α]		μενο	μενη
TMpP	X	Perfect Passive			μενο	μενη

Practice Filling in the Participle Formation Chart

➢ **What are the rules for:**

1. **When to augment?**
2. **When to reduplicate?**
3. **When to use a connecting vowel?**
4. **How to create the 2nd TF from the 1st TF?**
5. **What PM to use?**

T&V	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP						
2AAP						
1AAP						
1APP						
2APP						
1TAP						
2TAP						
PMpP						
2AMP						
1AMP						
TMpP						

Perfect Middle or Passive Participle of λύω

No TF or CV in TMpP, just like indicative.	Eta switches to alpha in the plural, as usual.	Always reduplicate for perfect aspect.

	TF	CV	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN			μενο M&N, μενη Fem	ς	–	ν	λελυμένος	λελυμένη	λελυμένον
SG				υ	ς	υ	λελυμένου	λελυμένης	λελυμένου
SD				ι	ι	ι	λελυμένῳ	λελυμένῃ	λελυμένῳ
SA				ν	ν	ν	λελυμένον	λελυμένην	λελυμένον
PN			μενο M&N, μενα Fem	ι	ι	α	λελυμένοι	λελυμέναι	λελυμένα
PG				ων	ων	ων	λελυμένων	λελυμένων	λελυμένων
PD				ις	ις	ις	λελυμένοις	λελυμέναις	λελυμένοις
PA				υς	ς	α	λελυμένους	λελυμένας	λελυμένα

Practice Inflecting
Perfect Middle or Passive Participle of λύω

	T F	C V	PM	CE 2M	CE 1F	CE 2N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

1st Perfect Active Participle of λύω
Uses Kappa as TF (vs. κα in Indicative Mood)

MSN 3rd declension PE is sigma unless preceded by ν, ρ, σ, or οντ.

MSN uses sigma. Tau drops out before sigma. Lengthen to compensate.

TAPNSNa uses sigma as if it were masculine. Tau drops, but no lengthening, as usual in NSNa.

Always reduplicate for perfect aspect.

	T F	C V	PM	PE 3M	PE 1F	PE 3N	M	F	N
SN	κ		οτ / υια	ς	–	–	λελυκώς	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
SG	κ		οτ / υια	ος	ς	ος	λελυκότος	λελυκυίας	λελυκότος
SD	κ		οτ / υια	ι	ι	ι	λελυκότι	λελυκυίᾳ	λελυκότι
SA	κ		οτ / υια	α	ν	–	λελυκότα	λελυκυῖαν	λελυκός
PN	κ		οτ / υια	ες	ι	α	λελυκότες	λελυκυῖαι	λελυκότα
PG	κ		οτ / υια	ων	ων	ων	λελυκότων	λελυκυιῶν	λελυκότων
PD	κ		οτ / υια	σι(ν)	ις	σι(ν)	λελυκόσι(ν)	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι(ν)
PA	κ		οτ / υια	ας	ς	α	λελυκότας	λελυκυίας	λελυκότα

Tau drops out before sigma, but TAPMnPD doesn't lengthen (exception).

Practice Inflecting 1ˢᵗ Perfect Active Participle of λύω

1. **Why that MSN case ending?**
2. **Why that NSNa case ending?**
3. **When do alpha and eta switch?**

4. **When do vowels lengthen?**

	TF	CV	PM	CE 3M	CE 1F	CE 3N	M	F	N
SN									
SG									
SD									
SA									
PN									
PG									
PD									
PA									

Preview of Chapter 30:
Perfect Participles & Participle Miscellanies

1. **Perfect tense**
   - **Past/Present Relative Time + Perfect Aspect**
   - **Translation**

2. **Form Perfect Participles**

3. **Parse Perfect Participles**

4. **Genitive Absolute Participles**

5. **Periphrastic Participles**

Practice Parsing Perfect Participles

- **Identify pieces (reduplication, tense stem, TF, CV, morpheme, CE)**
- **Then parse as a substantival participle.**
- **E.g., λελυκώς,**
    - **Has reduplication. Tense stem is λυ. Tense formative is kappa. No CV. Participle morpheme is οτ. Case ending is sigma. Tau drops out before sigma, and omicron lengthens to omega to compensate.**
    - **From λύω, TAPMSN "having-loosed man."**

1. λελυμένος
2. λελυμένον
3. λελυμένας
4. λελυμένοι
5. λελυκός
6. λελυκότα
7. λελυκότες
8. λελύκοσι
9. λελυκυῖα
10. λελυκότων

Preview of Chapter 30:
Perfect Participles & Participle Miscellanies

1. **Perfect tense**
   - **Past/Present Relative Time + Perfect Aspect**
   - **Translation**

2. **Form Perfect Participles**

3. **Parse Perfect Participles**

4. **Genitive Absolute Participles**

5. **Periphrastic Participles**

**Substantive Doing/Receiving Absolute Participle
Has no Grammatical Function in Main Clause**

- **Absolute construction:**
  - **e.g. "<u>Time permitting</u>, I'll finish the job."**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving participle
    has no grammatical function in main clause.**
    - **"Time" is not the subject, direct object, etc. of the main clause.**
  - **Logical relationship to the rest of the sentence.**
    - **"Time permitting" explains the conditions under which the main clause
      will happen.**

- ➢ **Identify: Main clause, absolute construction, and function of absolute.**
  1. **As He was proceeding, they were spreading out their garments underneath
     in the road… (Luke 19:36)**
  2. **Now after Jesus was born… magi from the East arrived… (Mt 2:1)**
  3. **When they boarded the boat, the wind stopped. (Mt 14:32)**
  4. **And when the Sabbath came, He began to teach in the synagogue… (Mk 6:2)**
  5. **Even though the twins were not yet born… it was said to her, "The older will
     serve the younger." (Rom 9:11-12)**

Absolute Participle Can't Set Case by Main Clause, So Uses Genitive.

- **Case of a Greek participle**
  - **Set by case of the substantive doing/receiving the participle's action.**

- **Substantive's case**
  - **Set by function in main clause.**
    - **E.g., If subject of main clause does participle, participle is Nominative.**
    - **E.g., If direct object of main clause does participle, participle is Dative.**

- **Absolute participle**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving participle's action has NO FUNCTION in main clause.**
  - **What case does it use?**
    - **The Genitive!**

- **"Genitive Absolute Participle" [a.k.a. "Genitive Absolute"]**

Genitive Absolute Construction

- καὶ <u>γενομένου σαββάτου</u> ἤρξατο διδάσκειν ἐν τῇ συναγωγῇ... (Mk 6:2)
  - "And when the Sabbath came, He began to teach in the Synagogue…"

- **Structure**
  - **Genitive Participle (Always)**
    - **NEVER has article**
  - **Genitive Substantive (Usually)**
    - **Doing/receiving action of participle**
  - **Front of Sentence (Usually)**

- **Meaning**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving participle not in main clause. (Always)**
  - **Adverbial participle (Always)**
    - **Never substantival**
    - **Never attributive**
    - **Never predicate**
  - **Temporal (Usually)**

Questions on Genitive Absolutes

- **Structure of genitive absolute:**
  1. **What parsing item is always true of the participle?**
  2. **What word never occurs?**
  3. **What word usually occurs?**
  4. **Word order?**

- **Meaning**
  5. **What is true about the substantive doing/receiving the participle?**
  6. **What use category does the participle always fit in?**
  7. **What use subcategory does the participle usually fit in?**

- **Demonstrate the answers to the above questions in the sentences below:**
  8. Τοῦ δὲ Ἰησοῦ γεννηθέντος ἐν Βηθλέεμ... μάγοι ἀπὸ ἀνατολῶν [**East**] παρεγένοντα [παραγίνομαι **I arrive**]... (**Matt 2:1**)
  9. καὶ ἀνοιξας [ἀνοίγω **I open**] τὸ στόμα αὐτοῦ ἐδιδασκεν αυτοὺς... (**Matt 5:1**)

Preview of Chapter 30:
Perfect Participles & Participle Miscellanies

1. **Perfect tense**
   - **Past/Present Relative Time + Perfect Aspect**
   - **Translation**

2. **Form Perfect Participles**

3. **Parse Perfect Participles**

4. **Genitive Absolute Participles**

5. **Periphrastic Participles**

Copulative Verb + Participle = Periphrastic Construction

- **Copulative verb + Participle = Periphrastic construction.**
  - **E.g., "I am going."**
    - **"am" is the copulative verb.**
    - **"going" is the participle.**

➢ **Identify the copulative verb and participle:**
  1. **She is studying.**
  2. **He is singing.**

- **Meaning:**
  - **English: Express continuous aspect.**
  - **Classical Greek: Emphasize aspect.**
  - **Koine Greek: Style. Occasionally to emphasize aspect.**
  - **In GNT, decide emphasis on aspect based on context.**

Forming Greek Periphrastic Construction

- καὶ <u>ἔσεσθε μισούμενοι</u> ὑπὸ πάντων διὰ τὸ ὄνομά μου… (Matt 10:22)
  - "And <u>you will be hated</u> by all because of my name…"
  - Perhaps "And <u>you will be being hated</u> by all because of my name…"

- **Copulative verb + Participle = Periphrastic construction.**

  - **Copulative verb (Always)**
    - εἰμί, γίνομαι, **or** ὑπάρχω

  - **Participle (Always)**
    - **NEVER has article**
    - **Usually nominative**
    - **Usually follows copulative verb**

Meaning of Greek Periphrastic

- καὶ ἔσεσθε μισούμενοι ὑπὸ πάντων διὰ τὸ ὄνομά μου… (Matt 10:22)
  - "And **you will be hated** by all because of my name…"
  - Periphrastic has meaning of masculine FPI2P.
- Can produce any tense and mood periphrastically
  - Except the aorist tense (because periphrastic participle almost never aorist)
- Copulative verb indicates
  - Time, Mood (Usually indicative), Number, Person
- Participle indicates
  - Aspect, Voice, Gender, Number

Copulative Verb	+ Participle	= Meaning
Imperfect Indicative	Present	Imperfect
Present Indicative	Present	Present
Future Indicative	Present	Future
Imperfect Indicative	Perfect	Pluperfect
Present Indicative	Perfect	Perfect
Future Indicative	Perfect	Future Perfect

Questions on Meaning of Greek Periphrastic

1. Which tenses can be produced periphrastically?
2. Which tenses cannot? Why?
3. What does the parsing of the copulative verb indicate?
4. What does the parsing of the participle indicate?
5. What emphasis does a periphrastic construction have?

Copulative Verb	+ Participle	= Meaning
Imperfect Indicative	Present	
Present Indicative	Present	
Future Indicative	Present	
Imperfect Indicative	Perfect	
Present Indicative	Perfect	
Future Indicative	Perfect	

Review of Chapter 30:
Perfect Participles & Participle Miscellanies

1. **Perfect Participle Meaning**

   - **Past/Present Relative Time + Perfect Aspect**

2. **Form Perfect Participles**

   - **Reduplication, Perfect Stem, οτ & υια Active Morphemes**

3. **Parse Perfect Participles**

4. **Genitive Absolute Participles**

   - **Anarthrous (no article) genitive participle.**
   - **Doer/receiver of participle has no grammatical function in main clause.**

5. **Periphrastic Participles**

   - **Copulative Verb + Participle**
   - **A round-about way of expressing the meaning of a verb tense.**

Participles Lack a Subject,
But They Have a Subject Substitute

- **Role of Participle's Subject Substitute:**
  - **Active or Middle Voice (or Deponent)**
    - **Substantive <u>does</u> action of participle.**
  - **Passive Voice**
    - **Substantive <u>receives</u> action of participle.**

- **Location of Participle's Subject Substitute:**
  - **Usually in main clause**
    - **E.g., "While praying, <u>Amy</u> kneeled."**
  - **Absolute construction ➔ Not in main clause**
    - **E.g., "While <u>she</u> was praying, Jesus listened."**

- **Case of Participles' Subject Substitute:**
  - **Participle case matches subject-substitute case.**
  - **Function of subject-substitute in main clause sets case of both.**
  - **Genitive case if absolute construction.**

Participles Can Have Modifiers and Direct Objects

- **Greek participles can have direct objects.**
  - **"<u>Studying Greek</u>, I did my homework."**
  - **"Greek" is the direct object of the participle "studying."**

- **Greek participles can have adverbial modifiers.**
  - **"<u>Studying carefully</u>, I did my homework."**
  - **"Carefully" is an adverb modifying the participle "studying."**

- **Greek participles can have adverbial modifiers that are prepositional phrases.**
  - **"<u>Studying at my desk</u>, I did my homework."**
  - **"At my desk" is a prepositional phrase that modifies the participle "studying."**

- **A participle, together with all of its modifiers, is a <u>participial phrase</u>.**
  - **The participial phrases above are underlined.**

Advanced Information: Participles Have Tense, From Which They Have Time.

- Time in participles is different than in finite verbs.

- Finite verbs in the indicative mood have <u>absolute time</u>.
  - Time in the indicative mood is from the perspective of the speaker or writer.
  - e.g. Jesus used a future tense in AD 33 to describe the destruction of the temple in AD 70. AD 70 was future time from the perspective of His speech, even though it is past time from our perspective.

- Time for participles is NOT like that, but participles may have time.

Advanced Information:
Participles have Relative Time

- **Finite Verbs in the indicative mood have absolute time.**
- **Participles have <u>relative time</u>.**
    - Time in participles is <u>relative</u> to the time of the main verb, not to the time of the speaker or writer.
    - e.g. "While He was <u>walking</u>, someone touched Jesus."
        - The time of the participle "walking" is relative to the time of the main verb "touched."
        - A present participle generally has contemporaneous time, so the "walking" happened at the same time as the "touching."
    - e.g. "After stopping, Jesus talked with Peter."
        - The time of the participle "stopping" is relative to the time of the main verb "talked."
        - An aorist participle generally has prior ("antecedent") time, so the "stopping" happened prior to the "talking."
    - Context determines how much emphasis the time has in a participle.
    - Aspect is almost always more important than time in participles.

Advanced Information:
Tense and Time of Participles

- Four tenses of participles exist.
- They have the aspect and time that you would expect.
- The weight of the aspect and time depend upon the context
  - Aspect may be totally absent in some contexts, particularly for substantival participles.

Tense	Aspect	One adverbial translation	Time
Present Participle	Continuous	While Xing	Same time as main verb
Aorist Participle	Undefined	After he Xed	Before the main verb (may be same time if main verb is aorist)
Perfect Participle	Perfect	Having Xed	Before the main verb
Future Participle	Undefined (Continuous?)	In order to X	After the main verb

Advanced Information:
Many Subcategories of Adverbial Participles Exist

Each set of underlined words translate one Greek word, a participle.

- Temporal (<u>while running</u>)
- Manner (She came <u>trembling</u>. They went on their way <u>rejoicing</u>.)
- Means (I have sinned <u>by betraying</u> innocent blood.
- Cause (<u>Because He was weary</u>, Jesus sat down by the well.)
- Condition (How does it benefit a man <u>if he should gain</u> the whole world?)
- Concession (<u>Although you have</u> eyes, do you not see?)
- Purpose (A certain lawyer stood up <u>to test</u> Jesus)
- Result (Jesus called God His own Father, <u>making</u> himself equal to God.)
- Attendant circumstance (Now <u>go and</u> learn what this means.)
  - The main verb is emphasized, not the participle.
- Redundant (Jesus, <u>answering</u>, said)
- Indirect discourse (Jacob heard <u>that there was</u> grain in Egypt)
- Complementary to a verb (When Jesus finished <u>teaching</u>)
- Periphrastic (Not one sparrow is <u>forgotten</u> before God).

Examples & categories from Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*

Advanced Information:
Practice Categorizing Adverbial Participles

- He was thinking within himself, <u>saying</u>, "What shall I do..."

- In all the world the Gospel is <u>bearing</u> fruit.

- He said this <u>to signify</u> by what sort of death he would die.

- <u>Although you have</u> not <u>seen</u> Him, you love Him.

- Whatever you ask for in prayer, <u>if you believe</u>, you will receive it.

- Peter kept on <u>knocking</u>.

- <u>Laying aside</u> every burden, let us run!

- Joseph, <u>because he was</u> a righteous man, meant to send her away secretly.

- We labor, <u>working</u> with our own hands.

- But others <u>mocking</u> were saying...

- <u>When</u> the crowd <u>saw</u> him, they were amazed.

- A cloud came <u>and covered</u> them.

Examples from Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*

Participles Use the Same Tense Stems as the Indicative

- **Participle = Redup? + <u>Tense Stem</u> + Tense Formative? + Connecting Vowel? + <u>Participle Morpheme</u> + <u>Case Ending</u>**

- **Participles use the same tense stems as the indicative mood.**

- **The table below shows the only tenses of participles that exist.**

  - **Pluperfect, future perfect, and imperfect participles don't exist -- probably because relative time renders them nearly useless.**

  - **The future participle is very rare.**

Participle Tense	Augment?	Redup?	Tense Stem
Present A/M/P			**Present**
Future A/M			**Future Active**
Aorist A/M			**Aorist Active**
Perfect A		**X**	**Perfect Active**
Perfect M/P		**X**	**Perfect Middle**
Aorist P			**Aorist Passive**
Future P			**Aorist Passive**

Practice
Participle Formation

- What is the master pattern for forming a participle?

- What do we report when parsing a participle?

- What tenses of participles exist?

- Which tenses of participles augment?

- Which tenses of participles reduplicate?

- Fill in the following table:

Participle Tense	Augment?	Redup?	Tense Stem

Complete Chart of Participle Formation

Tense	Red	Tense Stem	TF	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP		Present		o	$\nu\tau$	$\nu\sigma\alpha$
FAP		Future Active	σ [liquid $\epsilon\sigma$]	o	$\nu\tau$	$\nu\sigma\alpha$
1AAP		Aorist Active	$\sigma\alpha$ [Liquid α]		$\nu\tau$	$\nu\sigma\alpha$
2AAP		Aorist Active		o	$\nu\tau$	$\nu\sigma\alpha$
APP		Aorist Passive	$\theta\epsilon$ [ϵ 2nd] {Epsilon not eta}		$\nu\tau$	$\nu\sigma\alpha$
TAP	X	Perfect Active	κ [none for 2nd] {Lacks alpha}		$o\tau$	$\upsilon\iota\alpha$
PMpP		Present		o	$\mu\epsilon\nu o$	$\mu\epsilon\nu\eta$
FMP		Future Active	σ [liquid $\epsilon\sigma$]	o	$\mu\epsilon\nu o$	$\mu\epsilon\nu\eta$
1AMP		Aorist Active	$\sigma\alpha$ [liquid α]		$\mu\epsilon\nu o$	$\mu\epsilon\nu\eta$
2AMP		Aorist Active		o	$\mu\epsilon\nu o$	$\mu\epsilon\nu\eta$
TMpP	X	Perfect Middle			$\mu\epsilon\nu o$	$\mu\epsilon\nu\eta$
FPP		Aorist Passive	$\theta\eta\sigma$ [$\eta\sigma$ 2nd]	o	$\mu\epsilon\nu o$	$\mu\epsilon\nu\eta$

Rules to Construct the Participle Formation Table

- Participles never augment.

- Tense stems and reduplication are identical to the indicative.

- Tense formatives are almost identical to the indicative, except that
  - 1st Aorist Passive Participle uses θε instead of θη
  - 2nd Aorist Passive Participle uses ε instead of η
  - 1st Perfect Active Participle uses κ instead of κα.
  - 2nd Perfect Active Participle uses nothing instead of α.

- Connecting vowels occur in the same tenses & voices as the indicative, but the connecting vowel is always omicron.

- The active & middle participle morphemes are used in the same tenses & voices that the active & middle personal endings are used in the indicative mood.
  - The middle participle morpheme is μενο (**M&N**) and μενη (**F**).
  - The active participle morpheme is ντ (**M&N**), and νσα (**F**).
    - Exception: The perfect active participle morpheme is οτ (**M&N**), and υια (**F**).

Practice Constructing the Participle Formation Table

- **What sets the declension of the case ending? What declensions are used?**

Tense	Red	Tense Stem	TF	CV	M&N PM	F PM
PAP						
FAP						
1AAP						
2AAP						
APP						
TAP						
PMpP						
FMP						
1AMP						
2AMP						
TMpP						
FPP						

Remember Rules for Case Endings.
What Rules and Exception Occur in Participles?

- **The singular nominative 3rd declension case ending is sigma, but if preceded by ν, ρ, σ, or $o\nu\tau$, then the ending is blank (–).**

- **The 3M/F SA case ending is alpha, except that stems ending in $\digamma$ or ι use nu, and 2-syllable words ending in $\iota\tau$, $\iota\theta$, or $\iota\delta$ that aren't accented on the final syllable usually drop the final consonant and use nu for the case end.**

- **The 3M/F PA case ending is $\alpha\varsigma$, except that stems ending in ι use $\epsilon\varsigma$.**

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	M	F	N	M & F	N
singular nominative	ς	–	ν	ς / –	–
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	$o\varsigma$	$o\varsigma$
singular dative	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	α / ν	–
singular vocative	ϵ	–	ν	–	–
plural nom/voc	ι	ι	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\epsilon\varsigma$	α
plural genitive	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$	$\omega\nu$
plural dative	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\iota\varsigma$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$	$\sigma\iota(\nu)$
plural accusative	$\upsilon\varsigma$	ς	$\underline{\alpha}$	$\alpha\varsigma$ / $\epsilon\varsigma$	α

Rules & Exception in Case Endings for Participles

- **What case ending is used and what is the rule for:**
  - ➢ **M&F SN participles?**
  - ➢ **M&F SA participles?**
  - ➢ **M&F PA participles?**
  - ➢ **TAPNSNa participles?**

declension	2	1	2	3	3
gender	**M**	**F**	**N**	**M & F**	**N**
singular nominative	ς	–	ν	ς / –	–
singular genitive	υ	ς	υ	ος	ος
singular dative	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι subscript	ι	ι
singular accusative	ν	ν	ν	α / ν	–
singular vocative	ε	–	ν	–	–
plural nom/voc	ι	ι	α̲	ες	α
plural genitive	ω̲ν	ω̲ν	ω̲ν	ων	ων
plural dative	ις	ις	ις	σι(ν)	σι(ν)
plural accusative	υς	ς	α̲	ας / ες	α

- **Remember feminine alpha and eta swaps.**

    – **Eta switches to alpha in the plural.**

    – **Alpha switches to eta in the SG & SD
      except when preceded by epsilon, iota, or rho.**

- **Tau can't stand at the end of a word (chapter 10).**

    – **This affects the active voice MSN & NSNa.**

- **Tau and nu drop out before sigma (chapter 10).**

    – **This affects the active voice MSN & MnPD and all feminine active
      forms where $\nu\sigma\alpha$ is the participle morpheme.**

- **A vowel lengthens when one or more letters after it drop out.**

    – **Two exceptions:**

        - **NSNa doesn't lengthen.**

        - **TAPMnPD doesn't lengthen.**

    – **ϵ ➤ $\epsilon\iota$ (spurious diphthong)**

    – **o ➤ ou (spurious diphthong) except ➤ ω in the MSN**

Practice Recognizing Middle-Voice Participles

Form	Parsing
λυόμενος	
λυσάμενος	
λελυμένος	
λυσάμενοι	
λυομένη	
λυομένας	
λυόμενον	
λυόμενος	
λυόμενοι	

Answer Key:
Recognizing Middle Voice Participles

Form	Parsing
λυόμενος	λύω, PMpPMSN, "While he looses for himself" (middle) or "While he is being loosed" (passive)
λυσάμενος	λύω, AMPMSN, "After he loosed for himself"
λελυμένος	λύω, TMpPMSN, "While he looses for himself" (middle) or "While he is loosed" (passive)
λυσάμενοι	λύω, AMPMPN, "After they loosed for themselves"
λυομένη	λύω, PMpPFSN, "While she is being loosed"
λυομένας	λύω, PMpPFPA, "While they are being loosed"
λυόμενον	λύω, PMpPMSA, "While he is loosing" or PMpPNSNa, "While it is loosing"
λυόμενος	λύω, PMpPMSN, "While he is being loosed"
λυόμενοι	λύω, PMpPMPN, "While they are being loosed"

Practice Parsing Participles

Form	Parsing
λυσάμενος	
λυσάμενοι	
λυθεισῶν	
λυθείς	
λυθέντα	
λυθέν	
λυομένη	
λυομένας	
λυόμενον	
λυόμενος	
λυόμενοι	
λύων	
λύσαντες	
λύσας	

Practice Parsing Participles

Form	Parsing
λυσάμενος	λύω, **AMPMSN**, "After he loosed for himself"
λυσάμενοι	λύω, **AMPMPN**, "After they loosed for themselves"
λυθεισῶν	λύω, **APPFPG**, "After they were loosed"
λυθείς	λύω, **APPMSN**, "After he was loosed"
λυθέντα	λύω, **APPMSA**, "After he was loosed" or **APPNPNa**, "After they were loosed"
λυθέν	λύω, **APPNSNa**, "After it was loosed"
λυομένη	λύω, **PMpPFSN**, "While she is being loosed"
λυομένας	λύω, **PMpPFPA**, "While they are being loosed"
λυόμενον	λύω, **PMpPMSA**, "While he is loosing" or **PMpPNSNa**, "While it is loosing"
λυόμενος	λύω, **PMpPMSN**, "While he is being loosed"
λυόμενοι	λύω, **PMpPMPN**, "While they are being loosed"
λύων	λύω, **PAPMSN**, "While he is loosing"
λύσαντες	λύω, **AAPMPN**, "After they were loosed"
λύσας	λύω, **AAPMSN**, "After he was loosed"

More Practice Parsing Participles

Form	Parsing
λύουσι(ν)	
λύουσας	
λύουσα	
λύοντες	
λελυμένῳ	
λελυμένος	
λελυμένοι	
λελυκώς	
λελυκυῖα	
λελυκυίας	
λελυκότες	
λελυκός	

More Practice Parsing Participles

Form	Parsing
λύουσι(ν)	λύω, PAPMnPD, "While they are loosing" or PAI3P, "They are loosing"
λύουσας	λύω, PAPFPA, "While they are loosing"
λύουσα	λύω, PAPFSN, "While she is loosing"
λύοντες	λύω, PAPMPN, "While they are loosing"
λελυμένῳ	λύω, TMpPMnSD, "After he/it having been loosed"
λελυμένος	λύω, TMpPMSN, "After he having been loosed"
λελυμένοι	λύω, TMpPMPN, "After they having been loosed"
λελυκώς	λύω, TAPMSN, "After he having loosed"
λελυκυῖα	λύω, TAPFSN, "After her having loosed"
λελυκυίας	λύω, TAPFPA, "After they having loosed"
λελυκότες	λύω, TAPMPN, "After they having loosed"
λελυκός	λύω, TAPNSNa, "After it having loosed"

Road Map:
Three Non-Indicative Moods Next

- **0-4: Introductory matters**

- **5-14: Nouns, etc.**
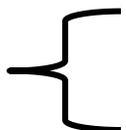
- **15-35: Verb Stuff**
  - **15-25: Indicative Mood**
  - **26-30: Participles**
  - **31-33: Non-Indicative Moods**
  - **34-35: μι Verbs**

  - **31: Subjunctive Mood**
  - **32: Infinitive "Mood"**
  - **33: Imperative Mood**

Preview of Chapter 31:
Subjunctive Mood

1. **Meaning of Subjunctive Mood**

2. **Form & Parse Subjunctive Mood**

3. **Miscellaneous**
   - **Subjunctive of εἰμί**
   - **Saying "No"**

**A Verb Has Mood
To Indicate the Relationship Between the Verb and Reality.**

- **Mood: indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or optative.**
  - **Indicative deals with reality. (Chapters 15-25).**
  - **Subjunctive deals with probabilities and possibilities. (Chapter 31).**
  - **Imperative deals with commands. (Chapter 33).**
  - **Optative deals with possibilities. (Chapter 35).**

- **These definitions are overly simplistic.**
  - **One can give a command in the indicative or subjunctive.**
  - **The subjunctive has many uses.**

- **In the Koine period, the subjunctive was killing off the optative.**
  - **The subjunctive is used for things (possibilities) that would have used the optative in classical Greek.**
  - **The optative is very rare (< 70 in the GNT).**

- **Hortatory subjunctive**
  - **In 1st person plural to exhort to an action.**
  - **"Let us pray."**

- **Deliberative subjunctive**
  - **Asks a question to get the audience to think.**
  - **"Therefore do not worry saying, 'What should we eat?'"**

- **Uncertain Conditionals**   **("3rd class condition")**
  - **"If I study, then I will learn."**
    - **"If"**
      - ἐάν
    - **"study"**
      - **Subjunctive mood**
    - **Implies that studying is:**
      - **Likely but not certain, or**
      - **Possible, or**   **(subjunctive took over optative role)**
      - **Hypothetical only**   **(subjunctive took over optative role)**

Common Uses of Subjunctive
2

- **Use Subjunctive after certain words:**
  - ἵνα   so that
    - **"Repent so that nothing worse <u>will happen</u> to you."**
  - ὅταν (ὅτε + ἄν)   whenever
  - ἐάν (εἰ + ἄν)   if   **(3rd-class conditional statement)**
  - ὅς ἄν   whoever
  - ὅπου ἄν   wherever
  - ἕως   until
  - ἕως ἄν   until

Only 3 Tenses in Subjunctive.
Only 2 in GNT.

- **No time in subjunctive.**
  - **Tense ➔ Aspect only**
  - **Only need 3 tenses**
    - **present, aorist, and perfect**

- **Perfect subjunctive form rare**
  - **In the NT only with οἶδα**
    - **οἶδα "I know" only occurs in tenses with perfect aspect.**
    - **οἶδα doesn't follow the normal formation rules**
      - **εἰδῶ is οἶδα TAS1S "I may know"**
      - **E.g., "And if (ἐάν)… I may know (εἰδῶ) all mysteries"**

- **Greeks almost never used the perfect subjunctive form.**
  - **How then did they express perfect subjunctive meaning?**
    - **Expressed meaning periphrastically!**
      - **Subjunctive of εἰμί and the perfect participle.**

Subjunctive Tense Indicates Aspect Only
No Time ➔ 3 Tenses Only

	Time Indicated by Context, not Tense
Undefined Aspect	**Aorist Subjunctive**
Continuous Aspect	**Present Subjunctive**
Perfect Aspect	**Perfect Subjunctive (Very Rare)**

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	**Aorist Indicative**	**Present Indicative**	**Future Indicative**
Continuous Aspect	**Imperfect Indicative**	**Present Indicative**	**Future Indicative?**
Perfect Aspect	**Pluperfect Indicative**	**Perfect Indicative**	**Future Perfect Indicative**

Preview of Chapter 31:
Subjunctive Mood

---

1. **Meaning of Subjunctive Mood**

2. **Form & Parse Subjunctive Mood**

3. **Miscellaneous**
   - **Subjunctive of εἰμί**
   - **Saying "No"**

How to Form the Subjunctive

- **No Augment**
  - **No absolute time.**
- **Reduplicate if perfect aspect**
  - **As always**
- **Same tense stems**
  - **As always**
- **Tense formatives**
  - **Same except drop vowel at end**
- **Connecting vowel**
  - **ALWAYS use a connecting vowel**
  - **ω/η instead of o/ε**
  - **CV is the key to identifying the subjunctive.**
  - **Rule: No CV if TF ends in a vowel ➜ Drop final vowel of TF!**
- **Primary endings**
  - **No absolute time.**
  - **Aorist passive uses active endings (as usual)**

Tense Formatives & Connecting Vowels
In Subjunctive

- **Rule: CV unless (1) TF ends in a vowel, or (2) Perfect or Pluperfect**
- **Always have a connecting vowel in the subjunctive.**
  - **Even in the perfect!**
  - **This is the sign of the subjunctive.**
- **Therefore drop vowel at end of TF**
  - **Present:**
    - **No TF, as usual.**   (λύωμεν is PAS1P of λύω)
  - **1AAS, 1AMS:**
    - **TF is σ instead of σα**   (λύσωμεν is 1AAS1P of λύω)
    - **No TF for liquids instead of α**   (κρινώμεθα is 1AAS1P of κρίνω)
      - **When drop vowel at end of TF, have nothing left!**
  - **2AAS, 2AMS:**
    - **No TF, as usual**   (λάβωμεν is 2AAS1P of λαμβάνω)
  - **1APS**
    - **TF is θ instead of θη**   (λυθῶμεν is 1APS1P of λύω)
  - **2APS**
    - **No TF instead of η.**   (γραφῶμεν is 2APS1P of γράφω)
    - **When drop vowel at end of TF, have nothing left!**

Questions about Verb Formation

1. **What is the rule for when to augment?**
   Apply the rule to the subjunctive.

2. **What is the rule for when to reduplicate?**
   Apply the rule to the subjunctive.

3. **How do tense formatives for the subjunctive differ from the indicative?**

4. **Why do tense formatives for the subjunctive differ from the indicative?**

5. **What is the rule for when to use a connecting vowel?**
   Apply the rule to the subjunctive.

6. **When are active personal endings used? Middle endings?**

7. **What is the rule for when to use primary vs. secondary personal endings?**
   Apply the rule to the subjunctive.

Verb Formation Chart for the Subjunctive

Tense Voice Mood	Augment	Reduplication	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	Connecting Vowel	Personal Ending
PAS			P		ω/η	PA
PMpS			P		ω/η	PM
2AAS			AA		ω/η	PA
1AAS			AA	σ (none liquid)	ω/η	PA
2AMS			AA		ω/η	PM
1AMS			AA	σ (none liquid)	ω/η	PM
1APS			AP	θ	ω/η	PA
2APS			AP		ω/η	PA

Practice Filling in the
Verb Formation Chart for the Subjunctive

Tense Voice Mood	Augment	Reduplication	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	Connecting Vowel	Personal Ending
PAS						
PMpS						
2AAS						
1AAS						
2AMS						
1AMS						
1APS						
2APS						

31.2 CV Distinguishes Aorist Subjunctive from Future Indicative.
Note Ambiguities!

p#	PAI	FAI	PAS	1AAS	1APS
1s	λύω	λύσω	λύω	λύσω	λυθῶ
2s	λύεις	λύσεις	λύῃς	λύσῃς	λυθῇς
3s	λύει	λύσει	λύῃ	λύσῃ	λυθῇ
1p	λύομεν	λύσομεν	λύωμεν	λύσωμεν	λυθῶμεν
2p	λύετε	λύσετε	λύητε	λύσητε	λυθῆτε
3p	λύουσι(ν)	λύσουσι(ν)	λύωσι(ν)	λύσωσι(ν)	λυθῶσι(ν)

p#	PMpI	FMI	PMpS	1AMS
1s	λύομαι	λύσομαι	λύωμαι	λύσωμαι
2s	λύῃ	λύσῃ	λύῃ	λύσῃ
3s	λύεται	λύσεται	λύηται	λύσηται
1p	λυόμεθα	λυσόμεθα	λυώμεθα	λυσώμεθα
2p	λύεσθε	λύσεσθε	λύησθε	λύσησθε
3p	λύονται	λύσονται	λύωνται	λύσωνται

Practice Inflecting λύω

p#	PAI	FAI	PAS	1AAS	1APS
1s					
2s					
3s					
1p					
2p					
3p					

p#	PMpI	FMI	PMpS	1AMS
1s				
2s				
3s				
1p				
2p				
3p				

Preview of Chapter 31:
Subjunctive Mood

1. **Meaning of Subjunctive Mood**

2. **Form & Parse Subjunctive Mood**

3. **Miscellaneous**
    - **Subjunctive of εἰμί**
    - **Saying "No"**

Εἰμί **Has A Present Subjunctive Form**

- **Subjunctive form of** εἰμί **is memorable**
  - **Characteristic connecting vowels.**
  - **Active endings.**
  - **That's it!**
- **Means "I may be"**

p#	PXI	IXI	FXI	PXS
1s	εἰμί	ἤμην	ἔσομαι	ὦ
2s	εἶ	ἦς , ἦσθα	ἔσῃ	ἦς
3s	ἐστί(ν)	ἦν	ἔσται	ᾖ
1p	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν, ἦμεθα	ἐσόμεθα	ὦμεν
2p	ἐστέ	ἦτε	ἔσεσθε	ἦτε
3p	εἰσί(ν)	ἦσαν	ἔσονται	ὦσι(ν)

What Part of "No" Don't You Understand?

- **Subjunctive is negated by μή, not by οὐ.**
  - **οὐ is used usually for verbs in the indicative mood.**
  - **μή is used usually for verbs not in the indicative mood.**
    - **Participles and infinitives lack mood, so they use μή.**
    - **Subjunctive, imperative, and optative moods, so they use μή.**

- **οὐ μή + subjunctive**
  - **The strongest way to negate something in Greek.**
  - **It denies that there is any <u>possibility</u> of the thing happening.**
  - **E.g., ἀμὴν ἀμὴν λέγω σοι, <u>οὐ μὴ ἀλέκτωρ φωνήσῃ</u> ἕως οὗ ἀρνήσῃ με τρίς. (John 13:38)**
    - **"Amen, Amen, I say to you, there is zero possibility that a rooster will crow until you will deny me three times."**
    - **Contrary to some open theists, Jesus claims to have certain, rather than probabilistic, foreknowledge of Peter's future choice to sin.**

Yes / No Questions May Indicate the Expected Answer

- **Yes or no questions may or may not indicate the expected answer.**

  - **If the question begins with οὐ, then the answer "yes" is expected.**
    - **E.g., διδάσκαλε, οὐ μέλει σοι ὅτι ἀπολλύμεθα; (Mark 4:38)**
    - **"Teacher, you care that we are drowning, right?"**

  - **If the question begins with μή, then the answer "no" is expected.**
    - **E.g., μὴ πάντες ἀπόστολοι; (1 Cor 12:29)**
    - **"All are not apostles, right?"**
    - **Remember: "May (μή) expects nay."**

  - **If the question begins with neither, then the answer is not indicated.**

Review of Chapter 31:
Subjunctive Mood

---

1. **Meaning of Subjunctive Mood**

    •   **Exhortations: "Let us pray"**

    •   **Deliberative: "What shall we eat?"**

    •   **Purpose: "Repent so that nothing worse <u>would happen to you</u>"**

    •   **Uncertain Conditionals: "If <u>I exercise regularly</u>, I will be healthier"**

2. **Form & Parse Subjunctive Mood**

    •   **Only aorist and present tenses**

    •   **Always long connecting vowel**

    •   **Drop final vowel of tense formative**

    •   **Never augment or secondary endings**

3. **Miscellaneous**

    •   **Subjunctive of εἰμί**

    •   **Subjunctive negated with μή.**

Preview of Chapter 32:
Infinitives

1. **Introduction to Infinitives**

   - **Noun Made From Verb**
   - **Parsing Code is "N"**

2. **Dual Nature of Infinitives: Verbal Noun**

   - **Noun Nature**
   - **Verbal Nature**

3. **Use and Translation of Infinitives**

4. **Form & Parse Infinitives**

Infinitives are Verbal Nouns

- **Infinitive: A noun made from a verb**
    - **Compare to: A participle is an adjective made from a verb.**

- **English: "To X"**
    - **E.g., to sing, to be, to pray, to worship**

- **Greek:**
    - **More uses than English.**
    - **"To X" is not always the best translation.**

- **Uses:**
    - **Substantival**
    - **Adverbial**
    - **Independent verb (rare)**
    - **Note that same uses as participle, except not adjective.**

Parsing Codes for Infinitives

- **Parse an Infinitive:**
  - **lexical form, tense, voice, "infinitive," inflected meaning.**
  - **E.g., λύειν from λύω, present active infinitive, "to continue to loose"**

- **Parsing code "N" for infinitive**
  - **E.g. λύειν from λύω, PAN, "to continue to loose"**

➢ **Explain these parsing codes:**
  1. **E.g., PAN = Present Active Infinitive**
  2. **PMpN**
  3. **AAN**
  4. **AMN**
  5. **APN**
  6. **TAN**
  7. **TMpN**

Preview of Chapter 32:
Infinitives

1. **Introduction to Infinitives**

    • **Noun Made From Verb**

    • **Parsing Code is "N"**

2. **Dual Nature of Infinitives: Verbal Noun**

    • **Noun Nature**

    • **Verbal Nature**

3. **Use and Translation of Infinitives**

4. **Form & Parse Infinitives**

Infinitives Are Nouns
Without Gender, Number, or Case

- **Infinitives are Nouns made from Verbs.**

- **Infinitive parsing**
  - **Lexical form, tense, voice, "infinitive," inflected meaning.**
  - **E.g., λύειν from λύω, present active infinitive, "to continue to loose"**
  - **Omits gender, number, and case**

- **Infinitives are nouns, but:**
  - **No gender**
  - **No number**
  - **No case**

- **Beyond indeclinable**
  - **Indeclinable nouns' <u>forms don't change</u> with gender, number, or case.**
    - **But indeclinable nouns may <u>have</u> gender, number, and case.**
  - **Infinitives <u>lack</u> gender, number, and case.**

Noun Nature of Infinitives:
Same Uses, May Have Article

- **Can use infinitive just like a substantive**
  - **Subject of clause**   **(E.g., "<u>To pray</u> is good.")**
  - **Direct object of clause**   **(E.g., "She wanted <u>to sing</u>.")**
  - **Object of preposition**   **(E.g., "<u>After singing</u>, she prayed.")**
  - **More on this in a later slide…**

- **Infinitive form independent of its use.**
  - **E.g., Same form if subject or direct object.**

- **Infinitives may have article.**
  - **Article has gender, number, and case.**
  - **Neuter**
  - **Singular**
  - **Case of article set by function of infinitive in sentence.**
    - **E.g., "<u>To pray</u> is good." Article (if any) is nominative case.**

Infinitives are Made from Verbs.
Overview of Verbal Nature of Infinitives.

- **Parse an Infinitive:**
  - **lexical form, tense, voice, "infinitive," inflected meaning.**
  - **E.g., λύειν from λύω, Present Active Infinitive, "to continue to loose"**

- **Infinitives made from verbs**
  - **The lexical form is a verb**
    - **E.g., λύω**
  - **Have tense**
    - **Present, Aorist, Perfect, or Future (rare)**
  - **Have voice**
    - **Active, Middle, or Passive.**
    - **Can be deponent**
  - **No mood**
    - **Put "infinitive" in mood slot.**
    - **Negate with μή, not οὐ**
  - **No number or person**

Tense of an Infinitive Indicates Aspect Not Time
(Except Future Infinitive)

- **No time in the infinitive**
  - **So tense indicates aspect.**
    - **Only need 3 tenses: present, aorist, and perfect infinitives.**
  - **Exception:**
    - **Five future infinitives exist in the GNT**

- **Present infinitive**
  - **No time**
  - **Continuous aspect**
- **Aorist infinitive**
  - **No time**
  - **Undefined aspect**
- **Perfect infinitive**
  - **No time**
  - **Perfect aspect**
- **Future infinitive (very rare)**
  - **Future time relative to main verb**
  - **Undefined aspect**

Tense of an Infinitive Indicates Aspect Not Time
(Except Future Infinitive)

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Indicative	Present Indicative	Future Indicative
Continuous Aspect	Imperfect Indicative	Present Indicative	Future Indicative?
Perfect Aspect	Pluperfect Indicative	Perfect Indicative	Future Perfect Indicative

	Time Indicated by Context, not Tense	Future Relative to Main Verb
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Infinitive "To X"	Future Infinitive (Very Rare) "To X after the main verb"
Continuous Aspect	Present Infinitive "To continue to X"	
Perfect Aspect	Perfect Infinitive "To be in a state of having X'ed"	

Infinitives Lack a Subject and a Person.
Greek Infinitives Lack Mood.

- **Finite Verb**
  - **Has Person**   (By definition of "finite")
  - **Has Mood in Greek**   (Coincidence. Not by definition of "finite")

- **Non-Finite Verb**
  - **No Person**   (By definition of "not-finite")
  - **No Mood in Greek**   (Coincidence. Not by definition of "not-finite")

- **Non-finite verbs <u>in Greek</u>**
  - **Infinitives**   (Parse with "Infinitive" in mood slot)
  - **Participles**   (Parse with "Participle" in mood slot)

- **Finite Verbs <u>in Greek</u>:**
  - **Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Optative mood forms.**
  - **Every verb form other than infinitives and participles.**
  - **Finite Verb ➔ Has Mood in Greek**
  - **Has mood in Greek ➔ Finite Verb**

**Infinitives Can Form Clauses
Just Like Participles Form Clauses**

- **Participial Clause**
  - **E.g. "<u>After carefully putting his sore feet on the floor</u>, he stood up."**
  - **Participle**
  - **Direct object of participle**
  - **Adjectives, prepositions, adverbs, etc. modifying other elements of the participial clause.**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving participle (if genitive absolute)**
    - **Except for absolute constructions, the substantive doing/receiving the participle is in the main clause, not the participial clause.**
    - **Explained on next slide…**

- **Infinitive Clause**
  - **E.g. "<u>To carefully put his sore feet on the floor</u> was his next task."**
  - **Infinitive**
  - **Direct object of infinitive**
  - **Adjectives, prepositions, adverbs, etc. modifying other elements of the infinitival clause.**
  - **Substantive doing/receiving infinitive**
    - **Explained on next slide…**

Case of Subject of Infinitive

- **Accusative Case for Subject of Infinitive.**
  - **E.g., ἔδει σε βαλεῖν "It is proper for you to take" (Mat 25:27)**
    - **Subject σε ("you") is in the accusative.**
    - **Active voice, so subject does the action of the infinitive ("to take").**
  - **E.g., πρὸ τοῦ ὑμᾶς αἰτῆσαι αὐτόν. "before you ask him" (Mat 6:8)**
    - **Subject ὑμᾶς ("you") is in the accusative.**
    - **Active voice, so subject does the action of the infinitive ("to ask").**
  - **E.g., δεῖ λυθῆναι αὐτὸν "It is necessary for <u>him</u> to be loosed" (Rev 20:3)**
    - **Subject αὐτόν ("him") is in the accusative.**
    - **Passive voice, so subject receives the action of the infinitive ("to be loosed").**

- **The subject of the infinitive may be implicit rather than explicit.**
  - **Just like for a finite verb.**

Controversies and Fine Print
About Subject of Infinitive

- **Fine Print: Subject of Infinitive Can be Nominative Case**
  - **Occurs only when subject of infinitive is subject of main verb.**
  - **The only examples I've seen are for infinitive of εἰμί.**
    - **E.g., ηὐχόμην ἀνάθεμα εἶναι αὐτὸς ἐγὼ "For I might wish I myself to be accursed" (Rom 9:3) – See BDF 209 for explanation.**

- **Fine Print: Subject of infinitive can perhaps occur in other cases**
  - **Mounce (294) states that for verbs that take their direct object in the dative will take the subject of the infinitive in the dative. I couldn't find any examples of this with the two verbs he mentions.**
  - **Wallace (192) gives four other examples, none of which convinced me.**

- **Controversy: Is it a "subject"?**
  - **Mounce (293) calls it an accusative of reference.**
  - **Wallace (192) argues that it functions as a subject, and hence should be called the subject.**
  - **BDF (208-209) and Black (115) call it the subject.**

Questions on Dual Nature of Infinitives

1. What do you list when parsing an infinitive?
2. What noun-features does an infinitive have? And lack?
3. What does it mean that a noun is indeclinable?
4. Are infinitives indeclinable? Explain.
5. What sets the gender, number, and case of the article of an infinitive?
6. What verb-features does an infinitive have? And lack?
7. What word is usually used to negate an infinitive? οὐ or μή?
8. What does it mean that a verb is finite? Or not-finite?
9. Why types of Greek verb forms are not finite verbs? What types are?
10. What tenses exist for infinitives?
11. What does the tense of an infinitive imply?
12. What does the voice of an infinitive imply?
13. What can a participial clause contain?
14. What roles are possible for a word in the accusative that is in an infinitival phrase?

Preview of Chapter 32:
Infinitives

1. **Introduction to Infinitives**

   • **Noun Made From Verb**

   • **Parsing Code is "N"**

2. **Dual Nature of Infinitives: Verbal Noun**

   • **Noun Nature**

   • **Verbal Nature**

3. **Use and Translation of Infinitives**

4. **Form & Parse Infinitives**

Three Broad Categories of Uses of Greek Infinitive

- **Substantival**
  - **Subject**
  - **Direct Object**
  - **Object of a Preposition**

- **Adverbial**
  - **Purpose**
  - **Result**
  - **Complementary Infinitive**

- **Independent Verb (rare)**

- **More details in following slides…**
- **Wallace has more subcategories and details.**

Main Substantival Uses of Greek Infinitive

- **Subject:**
  - **May or may not have article.**
    - **If article, article is always nominative.**
  - **E.g., "For me, <u>to continue to live</u> is Christ and <u>to die</u> is gain." (Phil 1:21)**

- **Direct object:**
  - **May or may not have article.**
    - **If article, article is accusative unless main verb takes a direct object in another case (e.g., Dative).**
  - **E.g., "Accordingly, brothers, desire zealously <u>to prophesy</u>" (1 Cor 14:39)**
  - **Main verb is always transitive.**

- **Object of a preposition:**
  - **Always has article.**
    - **Article case set by preposition.**
  - **Unlike English.**
  - **Translate idiomatically, not word-for-word.**
  - **Meaning set by preposition and case of article.**
    - **See next two slides…**

- διά τὸ + infinitive ➤ **cause**
  - **E.g., "Jesus, <u>because He is remaining</u> [διὰ τὸ μένειν αὐτὸν] into eternity, has the priesthood permanently." (Heb 7:24)**
  - **Literally: "Because the to remain He"**

- εἰς τὸ + infinitive ➤ **purpose or result**
  - **E.g., "When you gather together <u>in order to eat</u> [εἰς τὸ φαγεῖν], wait for one another." (1 Cor 11:33)**

- πρὸς τὸ + infinitive ➤ **purpose**
  - **E.g., "Be careful not to do your righteousness in front of people <u>for the purpose of them to notice</u> [πρὸς τὸ θεαθῆναι αὐτοῖς]" (Matt 6:1)**

- μετὰ τὸ + infinitive ➔ after

  – E.g., "But <u>after I have been raised</u> [μετὰ τὸ ἐγερθῆναί με],
    I will go ahead of you to Galilee." (Mark 14:28)

- ἐν τῷ + infinitive ➔ when

  – E.g., "<u>While He was proceeding</u> [ἐν τῷ πορεύεσθαι] to Jerusalem,
    He was going between Samaria and Galilee." (Luke 17:11)

- πρὸ τοῦ + infinitive ➔ before

  – E.g., "From now I am telling you <u>before it happens</u> [πρὸ τοῦ
    γενέσθαι], in order that you may believe when it happens that I AM."
    (John 13:19)

Main Adverbial Uses of Infinitives

- **Purpose**   **(Infinitive has genitive article or is anarthrous)**

- **Result**   **(Clause often introduced by ὥστε)**

- **Complementary infinitive:**
  - **Completes the thought of the main verb.**
  - **Main verb is always intransitive.**
    - **Distinguishes from Direct Object Infinitives**
  - **Required by certain verbs:**
    - **δεῖ + infinitive**   **"it is necessary to X"**
      - **E.g., "Unto all the nations first it is necessary to be preached [δεῖ κηρυχθῆναι] the Gospel." (Mark 13:10)**
    - **ἔξεστι + infinitive**   **"it is permitted to X"**
    - **μέλλω + infinitive**   **"I am about to X"**
    - **δύναμαι + infinitive**   **"I am able to X"**
    - **ἄρχομαι + infinitive**   **"I am beginning to X"**
  - **Other verbs sometimes use a complementary infinitive.**

Questions on Uses of Infinitives

1. In the list below, which are the three broad categories of infinitive uses?
2. For each broad usage category, what are the subcategories listed below?
3. For each category below, what is the article's case when it has an article?
4. Which category below must have an article? Why?
5. Explain and give an example for each category below.
    –   Subject
    –   Object of Preposition
    –   Substantival
    –   Purpose
    –   Direct Object
    –   Result
    –   Complementary Infinitive
    –   Adverbial
    –   Independent Verb

Preview of Chapter 32:
Infinitives

1. **Introduction to Infinitives**

   • **Meaning**

   • **Parsing Code is "N"**

2. **Dual Nature of Infinitives: Verbal Noun**

   • **Noun Nature**

   • **Verbal Nature**

3. **Use and Translation of Infinitives**

4. **Form & Parse Infinitives**

Pattern for Forming Infinitive
1

- **No augment**
  - **No absolute past time in the infinitive mood.**
- **Reduplicate if perfect aspect**
- **Same tense stems as indicative**
  - **Same verbs deponent**
- **Same tense formatives as indicative**
  - **Except 1TAN uses κε   [Instead of κα]**
  - **Except 2TAN uses ε   [Instead of α]**
  - **Follows rule: 1ˢᵗ TF ➜ 2ⁿᵈ TF by dropping the first letter of the TF.**
- **Connecting vowels**
  - **Same rule: have CV unless**
    - **(1) TF ends in vowel,**
    - **(2) Perfect tense, or**
    - **(3) Pluperfect tense.**
  - **CV is always epsilon.**

Pattern for Forming Infinitive
2

- **Four infinitive morphemes:**
  - εν   active   **(Contracts with CV to form ει)**
    - **Except:** ι   1AAN
    - **Except:** ναι   TAN, APN
  - σθαι   middle
  - Same verbs deponent

- **No personal endings**
  - Not a finite verb, so lacks person.

- **No case endings**
  - Lacks gender, number, and case.

Questions on Forming Infinitives

1. What is the rule for when to **augment**? Apply the rule to infinitives.
2. What is the rule for when to **reduplicate**? Apply the rule to infinitives.
3. What is the rule for what **tense stems** to use? Apply the rule to infinitives.
4. When is a verb **deponent** as an infinitive as compared to as an indicative?
5. How do the **tense formatives** of infinitives differ from the indicative?
6. What is the rule for when to use a **connecting vowel**?
    Apply the rule to infinitives.
7. What **connecting vowels** are used in the indicative, subjunctive, participles, and infinitives?
8. What **morphemes** do infinitives use?
9. Which infinitive **morpheme** always contracts?
10. What **type of endings** do infinitives use? Why?

Infinitive Formation Chart

T&V	Red?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Inf Morph	E.g.
PA		Present		ϵ	$\epsilon\nu$	λύειν
FA		Future Active	σ [ες for liquid]	ϵ	$\epsilon\nu$	λύσειν
2AA		Aorist Active		ϵ	$\epsilon\nu$	βαλεῖν
1AA		Aorist Active	σα [α for liquid]		ι	λῦσαι
TA	X	Perfect Active	κε [ε for 2nd] { vs. κα for TAI}		ναι	λελυκέναι
1AP		Aorist Passive	θη		ναι	λυθῆναι
2AP		Aorist Passive	η		ναι	βαλῆναι
PMp		Present		ϵ	σθαι	λύεσθαι
FM		Future Active	σ [ες for liquid]	ϵ	σθαι	λύσεσθαι
2AM		Aorist Active		ϵ	σθαι	βαλέσθαι
1AM		Aorist Active	σα [α for liquid]		σθαι	λύσασθαι
TMp	X	Perfect Middle			σθαι	λελύσθαι
FP		Aorist Passive	θησ [ησ for 2nd]	ϵ	σθαι	λυθήσεσθαι

Practice Creating
Infinitive Formation Chart

T&V	Red?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Inf Morph	E.g.
PA						λυ
FA						λυ
2AA						βαλ
1AA						λυ
TA						λυ
1AP						λυ
2AP						βαλ
PMp						λυ
FM						λυ
2AM						βαλ
1AM						λυ
TMp						λυ
FP						λυ

Practice Parsing Infinitives

T&V	Red?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	CV	Inf Morph	E.g.
						βαλέσθαι
						βαλεῖν
						βαλῆναι
						λελύσθαι
						λελυκέναι
						λύειν
						λύεσθαι
						λύσασθαι
						λύσειν
						λύσεσθαι
						λῦσαι
						λυθήσεσθαι
						λυθῆναι

Two Infinitives of εἰμί

- εἰμί **has two infinitives:**
  - εἶναι
    - **Present infinitive   (PXN)**
    - **Means "to be"**
  - ἔσεσθαι
    - **Future infinitive   (FXN)**
    - **Means "to be [in the future]."**

Review of Chapter 32:
Infinitives

1. Noun made from a verb.

2. No gender, number, or case.

3. No person or mood.

4. Put "infinitive" in mood slot.   (parsing code "N")

5. Infinitive tense indicates aspect.   (except future infinitive has time)

6. Article is neuter singular.

7. Case of article depends on function of infinitive.

8. Perfect active tense formative is κε / ε not κα / α

9. Connecting vowel is epsilon.

10. Morpheme:
    - **Active**   εν
        - ι   (1AAN)
        - ναι   (TAN, APN)
    - **Middle**   σθαι

11. No endings

Preview of Chapter 33:
Imperative Mood

1. **Meaning, Use, and Translation**

2. **Forming and Parsing**

3. **Miscellaneous: Negations and Prohibitions**

Imperative Mood Is Similar in Greek And English

- **English imperative**
  - **Gives a command**
    - **E.g., "Repent!"**
  - **Always 2nd person**
    - **E.g., Understood subject of "Repent!" is the person or people spoken to.**

- **Greek imperative**
  - **Multiple uses**
  - **2nd person or 3rd person**
    - **Never 1st person   (you never command yourself).**
    - **3rd person hard to translate.**
      - **E.g., "He must repent!"**

Overview of Greek Imperatives

- **Finite verb**
  - **Has a subject**
    - **Has "person"**
      - **2nd or 3rd person only for imperatives.**
    - **Uses personal endings**

- **Mood is "imperative"**

- **Tense**
  - **Indicates aspect.**
  - **Doesn't indicate time.**
    - **One tense per aspect.**
      - **Present, Aorist, and Perfect Tenses only.**
  - **Aspect can be awkward to translate**

Imperative Tense Indicates Aspect

- **Tense:**
  - **Aspect, not time**
  - **Only present, aorist, and perfect tenses.**

- **Present imperative**
  - **Commands (or prohibits) a continuous action: "Continually look!"**
  - **Prohibitions can also be for general precepts (attitudes, habits, etc.)**

- **Aorist imperative**
  - **Commands (or prohibits) an action with undefined aspect: "Look!"**
  - **Prohibitions can also be for specific cases: "Don't steal that pen!"**

- **Perfect imperative**
  - **Rare (4 times in the NT, 20 times in canonical LXX)**

Main Uses of Imperative

- **Command**
  - **E.g., "<u>Untie</u> it and <u>bring</u> it." (Mark 11:2)**

- **Prohibition**
  - **A negative command formed with μή + imperative**
  - **E.g., "<u>Do not store up</u> for yourselves treasures on earth." (Matt 6:19)**

- **Request**
  - **"Please" is not explicit, but you may want to add it when translating.**
  - **E.g., "Jesus said to her, '<u>Give</u> me a drink.'" (John 4:7)**

Questions About Greek Imperatives

1. Are imperatives finite verbs? What does this imply?

2. What "Person" can an imperative be? Give English examples.

3. What does the tense of an imperative imply?

4. What tenses occur in the imperative mood? Why?

5. Contrast the meanings of different tenses in the imperative mood.

6. What are the three main uses of the imperative mood?

7. What moods exist in Greek? Contrast their meanings.

Preview of Chapter 33:
Imperative Mood

1. **Meaning, Use, and Translation**

2. **Forming and Parsing**

3. **Miscellaneous: Negations and Prohibitions**

Parse Imperatives

- **Lexical form, tense, voice, mood, person, number, meaning of inflected form.**
  - **E.g., λῦε is λύω, present active imperative, 2nd person singular, meaning "(You) loose!"**

- **Parsing code "M" for imperative mood**
  - **E.g., λῦε is λύω, PAM2S, meaning "(You) loose!"**
  - **Friberg Morphology uses "M" as parsing code.**
  - **BibleWorks (BGM) uses "D" as parsing code.**

- **Explain these parsing codes and translate for λύω:**
  - **AAM3P   Aorist Active Imperative, 3rd Person Plural, "They must loose"**
  1. **PAM2P**
  2. **PPM2S**
  3. **AMM3S**
  4. **TAM2S**

Rules for Forming Imperatives

- **No augment**
  - **Absolute past time can only occur in the indicative mood.**
- **Reduplicate if perfect aspect**
- **Same tense stems as indicative**
  - **Same verbs deponent**
- **Uses default tense formatives:**
  - **Remember: Indicative TF is not the default TF for 1AA and TA.**
    - **Switch from alpha to epsilon in 3rd singular only in indicative.**
    - **Default perfect active TF is kappa for 1st and nothing for 2nd.**
- **Connecting vowels**
  - **Same rule: have CV unless (1) TF ends in vowel, (2) Perfect Middle-Passive, or (3) Pluperfect Middle-Passive**
  - **CV is always epsilon.   [Just like infinitive]**
- **Personal endings   [Because finite verbs]**
  - **Unique endings**

Master Chart for Imperative Formation

- **Always use default tense formative in the imperative.**
- **Dashed ovals indicate where default tense formative differs from indicative.**
  - ➢ **What tense formatives are used in the indicative mood in the dashed ovals?**

Tense, Voice, Mood	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	Connecting Vowel	Personal Endings
PAM		P		ε	Active
PMpM		P		ε	Middle
1AAM		AA	σα [α liquid]		Active
2AAM		AA		ε	Active
1AMM		AA	σα [α liquid]		Middle
2AMM		AA		ε	Middle
1TAM	X	TA	κ	ε	Active
2TAM	X	TA		ε	Active
TMpM	X	TM			Middle
1APM		AP	θη		Active
2APM		AP	η		Active

Practice Filling In
Master Chart for Imperative Formation

1. What tenses do NOT occur in the imperative mood? Why?
2. What exceptions occur to the default tense formatives in the imperative mood?
3. Where do the imperative tense formatives differ from the indicative?

Tense, Voice, Mood	Redup?	Tense Stem	Tense Formative	Connecting Vowel	Personal Endings
PAM					
PMpM					
1AAM					
2AAM					
1AMM					
2AMM					
1TAM					
2TAM					
TMpM					
1APM					
2APM					

Questions on Forming Imperatives

1. What is the general rule for when to <u>augment</u>?
   Use that rule to explain when imperatives augment.

2. What is the general rule for when to <u>reduplicate</u>?
   Use that rule to explain when imperatives augment.

3. How do the <u>tense stems</u> of imperatives differ from the indicative?

4. When is a verb <u>deponent</u> as an imperative as compared to as an indicative?

5. How do the <u>tense formatives</u> of imperatives differ from the defaults?

6. How do the <u>tense formatives</u> of imperatives differ from the indicative?

7. What is the rule for when to <u>use a connecting vowel</u>?
   Use that rule to explain when imperatives use a connecting vowel.

8. What <u>connecting vowels</u> do imperatives use?

9. What <u>connecting vowels</u> are used in the indicative, subjunctive, participles, and infinitives?

10. What <u>morphemes</u> do imperatives use? Why?

11. What <u>type of endings</u> do imperatives use? (e.g., primary active, case, …).

Imperative Uses Unique Personal Endings

- **Unique endings**
  - **Memorize this table!**
- **Active & middle endings**
  - **Aorist passive uses active endings.**
- **Regular except for 2S in aorists.**
- **Sigma in 2S middle imperative**
  - **Intervocalic and drops out except in TMpM.**

Person & Number	Active Imperative Ending	Middle Imperative Ending
1S		
2S	– [ον 1AAM, θι or τι APM]	σο [ι 1AMM]
3S	τω	σθω
1P		
2P	τε	σθε
3P	τωσαν	σθωσαν

Imperative Paradigms

#P	PE	PAM	1AAM	2AAM	1APM	2APM
1S						
2S	– [ον 1AAM, τι or θι APM]	λῦε	λῦσον	βάλε	λύθητι	γραφήτι
3S	τω	λυέτω	λυσάτω	βαλέτω	λυθήτω	γραφήτω
1P						
2P	τε	λύετε	λύσατε	βάλετε	λύθητε	γράφητε
3P	τωσαν	λυέτωσαν	λυσάτωσαν	βαλέτωσαν	λυθήτωσαν	γραφήτωσαν

#P	PE	PMpM	1AMM	2AMM
1S				
2S	σο [ι 1AMM]	λύου	λῦσαι	βαλοῦ
3S	σθω	λυέσθω	λυσάσθω	βαλέσθω
1P				
2P	σθε	λύεσθε	λύσασθε	βάλεσθε
3P	σθωσαν	λυέσθωσαν	λυσάσθωσαν	βαλέσθωσαν

- No 1st person imperative.
- Imperative never augments because no absolute past time.
- Perfect imperative (not shown) reduplicates.
- C.V. always epsilon.

33.2

Practice Forming Imperatives

#P	PE	PAM	1AAM	2AAM	1APM	2APM
1S						
2S	– [ον 1AAM, τι or θι APM]	λυ	λυ	βαλ	λυ	γραφ
3S	τω	λυ	λυ	βαλ	λυ	γραφ
1P						
2P	τε	λυ	λυ	βαλ	λυ	γραφ
3P	τωσαν	λυ	λυ	βαλ	λυ	γραφ

#P	PE	PMpM	1AMM	2AMM
1S				
2S	σο [ι 1AMM]	λυ	λυ	βαλ
3S	σθω	λυ	λυ	βαλ
1P				
2P	σθε	λυ	λυ	βαλ
3P	σθωσαν	λυ	λυ	βαλ

1. Why is the 1st person blanked out?
2. Which forms augment?
3. Which forms reduplicate?
4. What is the connecting vowel?

Beware Ambiguous Forms!

- λύετε = PAI2P = PAM2P
  - **Indicative and imperative are identical forms.**
  - **E.g., λύετε = PAI2P = PAM2P.**
  - **Context can be ambiguous!**
    - **E.g., "Let not your heart <u>be troubled</u>; πιστεύετε in God, <u>believe</u> also in me." (John 14:1)**
    - **All three verbs forms (<u>underlined</u>) could be indicative or imperative.**
    - **Is the second verb indicative or imperative?**
      - **Indicative: Making an argument based on belief in God.**
      - **Imperative: Commanding to believe in God.**

- λύεσθε = PMpI2P = PMpM2P
  - **Same as above, but middle/passive voice**

- λῦσαι = 1AAN = 1AMM2S
  - **1st aorist active infinitive same form as 1st aorist middle imperative 2nd person singular**
  - **Context usually unambiguous.**

Practice Recognizing Imperatives
1

Form	Aug	Red	T.S.	T.F.	C.V.	P.E.	Parsing
λῦε	No	No	λυ	–	ε	–	PAM2S "You loose!"
λυέτω							
λύετε							
λυέτωσαν							
λυσάτωσαν							
λυθήτωσαν							
λυέσθωσαν							
λυσάσθωσαν							
βαλέτωσαν							
βαλέσθωσαν							
γραφήτωσαν							

Practice Recognizing Imperatives
2

Form	Aug	Red	T.S.	T.F.	C.V.	P.E.	Parsing
λυέτω							
λυέσθω							
λυσάτω							
λυσάσθω							
βαλέτω							
βαλέσθω							
λυθήτω							
γραφήτω							
λύετε							
λύσατε							
λύσασθε							

Practice Recognizing Imperatives
3

Form	Aug	Red	T.S.	T.F.	C.V.	P.E.	Parsing
λῦε							
βάλε							
λῦσον							
λύθητι							
γραφήτι							
λύου							
βαλοῦ							
λῦσαι							
λυέσθω							
λύεσθε							
λυέσθωσαν							

εἰμί Has Present Imperative
(But not Aorist or Perfect)

Present (no voice) indicative
    Imperfect (no voice) indicative
        Future (no voice) indicative
            Present (no voice) Subjunctive
                Present (no voice) Imperative

	PXI	IXI	FXI	PXS	PXM	Infinitives
1S	εἰμί	ἤμην	ἔσομαι	ὦ		**PXN** εἶναι
2S	εἶ	ἦς , ἦσθα	ἔσῃ	ᾖς	ἴσθι	
3S	ἐστί(ν)	ἦν	ἔσται	ᾖ	ἔστω	
1P	ἐσμέν	ἦμεν , ἦμεθα	ἐσόμεθα	ὦμεν		**FXN** ἔσεσθαι
2P	ἐστέ	ἦτε	ἔσεσθε	ἦτε	ἔστε	
3P	εἰσί(ν)	ἦσαν	ἔσονται	ὦσι(ν)	ἔστωσαν	

Preview of Chapter 33:
Imperative Mood

1. **Meaning, Use, and Translation**

2. **Forming and Parsing**

3. **Miscellaneous: Negations and Prohibitions**

Multiple Ways to Negate or Prohibit an Action in Greek

- οὐ + future indicative.
- μή + present imperative.
  - Prohibit continuous action or general principle.
- μή + aorist imperative.
  - Prohibit undefined action or specific case of an action.
- μή + aorist subjunctive.
- οὐ μή + aorist subjunctive.
  - Most forceful way to negate something.
  - Refers to a future situation.
  - "There is absolutely zero possibility that X will occur."
- μή + optative
  - a negative wish -- "may it not happen..."
  - E.g., "Shall we continue in sin? μὴ γένοιτο" (Romans 6:1-2)

Review of Chapter 33:
Imperative Mood

1. **Similar meanings as English**
2. **3rd person imperatives hard to translate: "He must go!"**
3. **Tense indicates aspect, not time.**
4. **Only 3 tenses: Present, Aorist, and Perfect (very rare).**
5. **Parsing code "M" for imperative mood.**
6. **Form as expected, except:**
   - **Connecting vowel epsilon.**
   - **Unique personal endings.**
7. **Beware ambiguous forms:**
   - **PAI2S = PAM2S (λύετε)**
   - **PMpI2S = PMpM2S (λύεσθε)**
   - **1AAN = 1AMM2S (λῦσαι)**

Person & Number	Active Imperative Ending	Middle Imperative Ending
1S		
2S	– [ο̱ν 1AAM, θι or τι APM]	σο [ι 1AMM]
3S	τω	σθω
1P		
2P	τε	σθε
3P	τωσαν	σθωσαν

Road Map:
The Last Two Chapters Are μι Verbs

- **0-4: Introductory matters**

- **5-14: Nouns, etc.**

- **15-35: Verb Stuff**
  - **15-25: Indicative Mood**
  - **26-30: Participles**
  - **31-33: Non-Indicative Moods**
  - **34-35: μι Verbs**
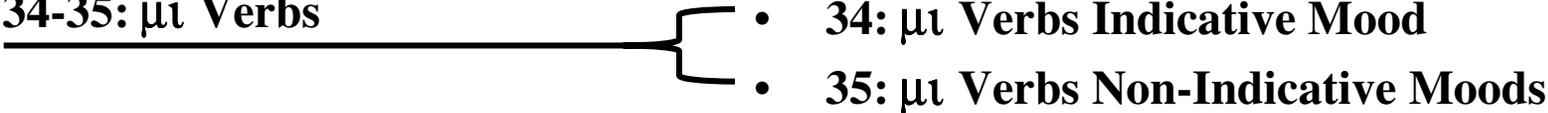
- **34: μι Verbs Indicative Mood**
- **35: μι Verbs Non-Indicative Moods**

- **Chapter 35 also includes the Optative Mood for all Verbs**

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
                      Optative Mood and μι Verbs

---

1.   Optative Mood

2.   μι Verbs – Formation Overview

2a. Tense Stem Formation Patterns

2b. Tense Formative Exception

2c. Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule

2d. Personal Ending Exceptions

2e. Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions

Meaning of Optative Mood

- **Optative is a mood.**

Indicative Mood	Assertion about reality
Subjunctive Mood	Uncertain things: purpose, exhortation, conditional
Imperative Mood	Command, request
Optative Mood	Uncertain things: wish, prayer, hope, conditional

- **Very rare.**
  - **68 in NT**   **(vs. 15,773 indicative mood in NT)**
  - **638 in LXX (including both Canonical and Apocryphal)**
- **Phasing out during the Koine period.**
  - **Doesn't occur in modern Greek.**
  - **Note the reduction in frequency from LXX to NT.**
  - **Subjunctive took over the uses of the Optative.**
- **Meaning of Optative Mood:**
  - **Possibility: Wish, prayer, hope.**
  - **E.g., "Shall we continue in sin? μὴ γένοιτο" (Romans 6:1-2)**

**Tense of an Optative Indicates Aspect Not Time
(Except Future Optative)**

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Indicative	Present Indicative	Future Indicative
Continuous Aspect	Imperfect Indicative	Present Indicative	Future Indicative?
Perfect Aspect	Pluperfect Indicative	Perfect Indicative	Future Perfect Indicative

	Time Indicated by Context, not Tense	Future Time
Undefined Aspect	Aorist Optative "X may happen"	Future Optative (6 in LXX) "May X happen in the future"
Continuous Aspect	Present Optative "X may continually happen"	**Future compared to what? Main verb? Speaker?**
Perfect Aspect	Perfect Optative (1 in LXX) "A state of having X'ed may exist"	

Formation of Optative –
6 Things to Note

TVM	Aug	Red	Stem	TF	CV	MF	PE
PAO			P		o	ι or ιη	SA
PMpO			P		o	ι or ιη	SM
FAO			FA	σ [ες for liquid]	o	ι or ιη	SA
FMO			FA	σ [ες for liquid]	o	ι or ιη	SM
1AAO			AA	σα [α for liquid, α ➔ ε in 1AAI3S]		ι or ιη	SA
1AMO			AA			ι or ιη	SM
2AAO			AA		o	ι or ιη	SA
2AMO			AA		o	ι or ιη	SM
TAO		X	TA	κα [κε for 3S, ∞, & imperative, κ for participle, κο for optative]		ι or ιη	SA
TMpO		X	TM			ι or ιη	SM
APO			AP	θη [θε for participle & optative]		ι or ιη	SA
FPO			AP	θης	o	ι or ιη	SM

Optative Uses Secondary Endings.
2 Optative Exceptions in Active Voice.

P#	Primary Active	Secondary Active	Imperative Active
1S	–	ν [– for 1AAI] [ν or μι for optative]	
2S	ις [ς for TAI]	ς	– [ον for 1AAM] [θι or τι for APM]
3S	ι [–(ν) for TAI]	–(ν) [– for API]	τω
1P	μεν	μεν	
2P	τε	τε	τε
3P	νσι(ν) [νσι(ν) or ν for TAI]	ν [σαν for AP] [σαν or εν for optative]	τωσαν

Summary of Formation of Optative Mood

- **No augment**   **(Because never absolute past time)**
- **Reduplicate if perfect aspect**
- **Same tense stems**
- **Same tense formatives**
  - **Exceptions in TAO (κο not κε) and APO (θε not θη)**
  - **Note that σα ➜ σε in 3S of 1AA only in indicative mood.**
- **Connecting vowel**
  - **Used in same places**
  - **Always omicron**
- **Mood formative**
  - **Always used in optative.**
  - **Either iota or ιη.**
- **<u>Secondary</u> personal endings!**
  - **Two exceptions in active voice:**
    - **1S is either νυ or μι.**
    - **3P is either σαν or εν.**

**Parsing the Optative Mood –
Examples**

- **Parsing clues:**
  - **Mood formative (iota or ιη) right before personal ending.**
  - **Secondary personal endings <u>without augment</u>.**

- **γένοιτο (17 times in NT, all in Luke or Paul's writings)**
  - **γεν is aorist active tense stem of γίνομαι**
    - **γίνομαι is middle deponent in aorist tense.**
  - **Omicron is connecting vowel**
  - **Iota is mood formative**
  - **το is secondary middle 3ʳᵈ person singular personal ending**
  - **Meaning: "May it be"**

- **πληθυνθείη (1 Peter 1:2)**
  - **πληθυν is aorist passive tense stem of plhquvnw**
  - **θε is aorist passive tense formative**
  - **ιη is mood formative**
  - **No personal ending is secondary active 3ʳᵈ person singular**
  - **Meaning: "May he/she/it multiply"**

**Parsing the Optative Mood –
Exercises**

- "And they were inquiring by making signs to his father what <u>θέλοι</u> him to be called." (Luke 1:62).

1. "And these were more noble-minded than the ones from Thessalonica, as they welcomed the word with all eagerness, each day questioning the Scriptures if these things <u>ἔχοι οὕτως.</u>" (Acts 17:11). [οὕτως ἔχει means "it is so"]

2. "And he answered and said to it, 'No longer into the eternity from you no one fruit <u>φάγοι.</u>'" (Mark 11:14) [ἔφαγον is the AAI1S of ἐσθίω]

3. "And Mary said, 'Behold the slave of the Lord. <u>γένοιτό</u> to me according to the word of you.'" (Luke 1:38)

Word	A?	R?	Stem	CV	MF	PE	Parse	Means
θέλοι	No	No	θελ	ο	ι	–	θέλω PAO3S	he might be wanting
ἔχοι								
φάγοι								
γένοιτό								

Questions about the Optative Mood

1. **What moods exist in Greek?**
   What do they mean?

2. **Why is the optative so rare in the NT?**

3. **What does the tense of an optative mean?**

4. **What is the rule for when verbs augment?**
   Apply the rule to the optative mood.

5. **What is the rule for when verbs reduplicate?**
   Apply the rule to the optative mood.

6. **What is the rule for when verbs use a connecting vowel?**
   Apply the rule to the optative mood.

7. **What connecting vowels does the optative mood use?**

8. **When does the optative mood use a mood formative?**
   What is it? Where does it go in the word?

9. **What is the rule for using primary vs. secondary personal endings?**
   Apply the rule to the optative mood.

10. **What are the clues that you have an optative?**

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
          Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**

2. **μι Verbs – Formation Overview**

   2a. **Tense Stem Formation Patterns**

   2b. **Tense Formative Exception**

   2c. **Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule**

   2d. **Personal Ending Exceptions**

   2e. **Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions**

μι Verbs Mean the Same as Other Verbs.
μι Verbs Are Spelled Differently

Ω **Verbs**	μι **Verbs**
E.g., λύω	E.g., δίδωμι
PAI1S ends in omega	PAI1S ends in μι
a.k.a. "Thematic Conjugation"	a.k.a. "Athematic Conjugation"
Meaning Explained in Ch. 16-33	Meaning Explained in Ch. 16-33
Spelling Explained in Ch. 17-33	Spelling Mostly Explained in Ch. 17-33. Exceptions to Spelling Rules in Ch. 34-35.
Spelled With a Connecting Vowel (a.k.a. "Thematic Vowel")	Spelled Without a Connecting Vowel

μι Verbs Are Spelled Differently

- **Chapters 16-33**
  - **Explained <u>meaning</u> of verb forms**
    - **E.g., Aorist indicative means past time undefined aspect.**
    - **The same meanings apply to μι verbs.**
  - **Explained <u>formation</u> of verb forms**
    - **E.g., Form AA11S with augment, tense formative σα, etc.**
    - **Most of this still applies to μι verbs.**
- **Chapters 34 and 35**
  - **Gives exceptions to verb formation rules for μι verbs.**
  - **The changes mostly effect the PAI.**
- **Some Verbs Spelled Both Ways!**
  - **μι verbs were gradually becoming regular verbs.**
  - **Some μι verbs were in transition during the NT period.**
    - **Such verbs are spelled both ways.**
    - **E.g. ἵστημι and ἱστάνω both occur in the GNT.**

μι **Verb Formation Table**

TVM	Aug	Red	Stem	TF	CV	PE
PAI			P			Special
PMpI			P			PM
IAI	X		P			SA
IMpI	X		P			SM
FAI			FA	σ	o / ε	PA
FMI			FA	σ	o / ε	PM
1AAI	X		AA	κα / κε for most, σα / σε for rest		SA
1AMI	X		AA	Use second aorist if used κα in 1AA		SM
2AAI	X		AA			SA
2AMI	X		AA			SM
TAI		X	TA	κα / κε		PA
LAI	X?	X	TA	κει		SA
RAI		X	TA	σ	o / ε	PA
TMpI		X	TMp			PM
LMpI	X?	X	TMp			SM
RMpI		X	TMp	σ	o / ε	PM
API	X		AP	θη		SA
FPI			AP	θης	o / ε	PM

μι Verb Formation Summary

- **Augment** (As Usual)
- **Reduplication** (As Usual)
- **Tense Stems** (As Usual)
  - **Pattern for Tense Stems from Root** ←
- **Tense Formatives** (As Usual)
  - **Exception: Most Use κα (κε 3rd singular) in 1AA** ←
- **Connecting Vowel** ←
  - **Stem ends in vowel, so CV unnecessary.**
    - **Exception: Need (and use) CV if forced by TF or Subjunctive**
  - **Eliminate CV where CV would contract with final stem vowel.**
- **Personal Endings** (As Usual)
  - **7 Exceptions: PAI, *AM2S, and IAI3P.** ←
- **Morphemes** (As Usual)
  - **Exception: PAN and 2AAN infinitive morphemes** ←

Questions About μι Verb Overview

1. **What are the two verb conjugations?**
    (i.e., two types of verb formation patterns)

2. **What are the other names for these two verb types?**

3. **How do the two verb conjugations differ in meaning?**

4. **What about nouns and adjectives is similar in concept to the existence of two verb conjugations? (hint – there are three of these for nouns).**

5. **What is another name for "connecting vowel"?**

6. **What is the rule for when verbs augment?**
    Apply the rule to μι verbs.

7. **What is the rule for when verbs reduplicate?**
    Apply the rule to μι verbs.

8. **What is the rule for when to use primary or secondary personal endings?**
    Apply the rule to μι verbs.

9. **What is the rule for when to use active or middle personal endings?**
    Apply the rule to μι verbs.

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
                    Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**

2. **μι Verbs – Formation Overview**

    2a. Tense Stem Formation Patterns

    2b. Tense Formative Exception

    2c. Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule

    2d. Personal Ending Exceptions

    2e. Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions

**μι Verbs Present Tense Stem From Root –
2 Patterns**

Ω Verbs	μι Verbs
All tense stems formed from root ◄──►	All tense stems formed from root
Five patterns of present stem formation: 1. Present Stem = Root ◄──► 2. Pres Stem = Root + Consonantal Iota 3. Present Stem = Root + Nu 4. Present Stem = Root + Tau 5. Present Stem = Root + ι(σκ)	Two patterns of present stem formation: 1. Present Stem = Root 6. Pres Stem = Iota Reduplication + Root
Other tense stems usually = Root ◄──►	Other tense stems usually = Root

- **Present Tense Stem = Root**
  - **For 7** μι **verbs plus their compounds.**
- **Present Tense Stem = Iota Reduplication + Root**
  - **For the other 8** μι **verbs plus their compounds.**
  - **Iota reduplication:**
    - **Reduplicate initial consonant of the root**
    - **Separate the reduplicated consonants with iota.**
      - **E.g., *δο → διδο**
    - **Reduplicated aspirate is unvoiced   (See chapter 25)**
      - **E.g., *θε → τιθε**
  - **Memorize the root along with the lexical form!**
    - **E.g., Memorize δίδωμι and its root *δο**
  - **Variations on Iota Reduplication:**
    - **Sometimes the reduplication is hidden (*στα → σιστα → ἵστα).**
    - **Sometimes letters drop out or are added (*πρα→πιπρα→ πιμπρα)**

μι **Verbs Present Tense Stem From Root –**
Practice Iota Reduplication

➢ **Use Iota Reduplication to form the present tense stem from the root.**

1. *δο →   διδο

2. *θε →   τιθε

3. *ἀναδο →   ἀναδιδο

4. *ἀποδο →   ἀποδιδο

5. *μεταδο →   μεταδιδο

6. *ἀναθε →   ἀνατιθε

7. *προδο →   προδιδο

8. *ἀποθε →   ἀποτιθε

9. *προσδο →   προσδιδο

10. *παραθε →   παρατιθε

11. *συνεπιθε →   συνεπιτιθε

μι Verbs Present Tense Stem From Root –
List of All 15 μι Verbs and Roots

	Lexical Form	Present Tense Stem	Root
Present Tense Stem = Root	δύναμαι	δυνα	*δυνα
	εἰμί & εἶμι	εἰ	*ἐσ
	κάθημαι	καθη	*καθη
	κεῖμαι	κει	*κει
	στάμαι	στα	*στα
	φημί	φα	*φα
Present Tense Stem = Iota Reduplication + Root	δίδωμι	διδο	*δο
	ἵημι	ἵη	*σε
	ἵστημι	ἵστα	*στα
	κίχρημι	κιχρε (κιχρη?)	*χρε (*χρη?)
	ὀνίνημι	ὀνινα	*ὀνα
	πίμπλημι	πιμπλα	*πλα
	πίμπρημι	πιμπρα	*πρα
	τίθημι	τιθε	*θε

- List of μι verbs and roots from Mounce, *Morphology of Biblical Greek*, p. 314-316.
- The above verbs can have compound forms. E.g., ἀποδίδωμι.

μι Verb Formation Questions (A)

1. How do μι verbs form their present tense stem from the root? (2 ways).

2. What special rule applies to roots such as *θε?

3. What patterns are usually used for forming the other tense stems?

4. For the mi verb root *δο,
   What tense stem is δο?
   What tense stem is διδο?
   What tense stem is δεδο?

5. For some μι verbs, the tense stem formation pattern simplifies parsing.
   For some μι verbs it doesn't.
   What three things can hinder μι verb tense stem recognition?

6. Give the expected tense stems for the μι verb stem *δο,
   including any augment or reduplication.

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
                 Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**

2. **μι Verbs – Formation Overview**

    2a. **Tense Stem Formation Patterns**

    2b. **Tense Formative Exception**

    2c. **Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule**

    2d. **Personal Ending Exceptions**

    2e. **Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions**

μι **Verbs Have 1 Exception to Tense Formatives**

TVM	Aug	Red	Stem	TF	CV	PE
PAI			P			**Special**
PMpI			P			**PM**
IAI	X		P			**SA**
IMpI	X		P			**SM**
FAI			FA	σ	o / ε	**PA**
FMI			FA	σ	o / ε	**PM**
1AAI	X		AA	κα / κε for most, σα / σε for rest		**SA**
1AMI	X		AA	Use second aorist if used κα in 1AA		**SM**
2AAI	X		AA			**SA**
2AMI	X		AA			**SM**
TAI		X	TA	κα / κε		**PA**
LAI	X?	X	TA	κει		**SA**
RAI		X	TA	σ	o / ε	**PA**
TMpI		X	TMp			**PM**
LMpI	X?	X	TMp			**SM**
RMpI		X	TMp	σ	o / ε	**PM**
API	X		AP	θη		**SA**
FPI			AP	θης	o / ε	**PM**

μι Verb Tense Formatives –
Same Except κα for 1AAI for Some Verbs

- μι verbs use usual tense formatives
- **Exception for 1AAI for δίδωμι, ἵημι, τίθημι, and some ἵστημι**
  - **Other μι verbs use normal tense formative σα / σε.**
  - **1AAI tense formative is κα / κε, not σα / σε**
    - **E.g., ἔδωκα is 1AAI1S of δίδωμι   (not ἔδωσα)**
  - **κα / κε is same tense formative as perfect!**
    - **Reduplication in perfect distinguishes.**
      - **E.g., ἔδωκα is 1AAI1S of δίδωμι**
      - **E.g., δέδωκα is 1TAI1S of δίδωμι**
- **Exception only applies to 1AAI**
  - **In middle voice, all use 2nd aorist.**
    - **E.g., ἐδόμην is 2AMI1S of δίδωμι**
  - **Outside of indicative, all use σα / σε or use 2nd aorist.**
    - **E.g., δώσω is 1AAS1S of δίδωμι**
    - **E.g., δότω is 2AAM3S of δίδωμι**

μι Verb Formation Questions (B)

1. How do μι verbs form their present tense stem from the root? (**2 ways**).

2. What special rule applies to roots such as *θε?

3. What patterns are usually used for forming the other tense stems?

4. For some μι verbs, the tense stem formation pattern simplifies parsing.
   For some μι verbs it doesn't.
   What three things can hinder μι verb tense stem recognition?

5. Give the expected tense stems for the μι verb stem *δο,
   including any augment or reduplication.

6. What exception is there to the usual tense formatives?
   To what voices and moods does the exception occur?

7. Give the expected principle parts for the μι verb stem *δο,
   just up through the tense formative
   (skip the CV, MF, and PE at the end of the word).

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**

2. **μι Verbs – Formation Overview**

   2a. **Tense Stem Formation Patterns**

   2b. **Tense Formative Exception**

   2c. **Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule**

   2d. **Personal Ending Exceptions**

   2e. **Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions**

μι Verb Connecting Vowels –
μι Verbs Are Contract Verbs That Avoid Contraction

Contract Verbs	μι Verbs
Tense stem ends in a vowel ("Contract Vowel")	All tense stems end in a vowel ("Final stem vowel")
Contract vowel contracts when touches connecting vowel	Don't use connecting vowel if it would cause contraction
Contract vowel lengthens if it can't contract	Final stem vowel usually lengthens before a tense formative

μι Verb Connecting Vowels –
Skip Connecting Vowel Where No Tense Formative

TVM	Aug	Red	Stem	TF	CV	PE
PAI			P			Special
PMpI			P			PM
IAI	X		P			SA
IMpI	X		P			SM
FAI			FA	σ	o / ε	PA
FMI			FA	σ	o / ε	PM
1AAI	X		AA	κα / κε for most. σα / σε for rest		SA
1AMI	X		AA	Use second aorist if used κα in 1AA		SM
2AAI	X		AA			SA
2AMI	X		AA			SM
TAI		X	TA	κα / κε		PA
LAI	X?	X	TA	κει		SA
RAI		X	TA	σ	o / ε	PA
TMpI		X	TMp			PM
LMpI	X?	X	TMp			SM
RMpI		X	TMp	σ	o / ε	PM
API	X		AP	θη		SA
FPI			AP	θης	o / ε	PM

μι **Verb Connecting Vowels –**
Skip Connecting Vowel Usually

- μι verbs don't use a connecting vowel.
- **Exceptions – Use connecting vowel in the following cases:**
  - **Tense formatives that end in a consonant**
    - **Such tense formatives require CV for pronunciation**
    - **Namely: Future and Future Perfect TF end in sigma**
    - **E.g., δώσω is FAI1S of δίδωμι   (Not δώς)**
    - **E.g., δώσομαι is FMI1S of δίδωμι   (Not δώσμαι)**
    - **E.g., δωθήσομαι is FPI1S of δίδωμι   (Not δώθησμαι)**
  - **Subjunctive**
    - **Subjunctive requires CV for recognition**
    - **CV used instead of final vowel of μι verb stem.**
    - **E.g., τιθῶ is PAS1S of τίθημι**
      - ***θε ➔ τιθε ➔ τιθ + ω (CV) + – (PE) ➔ τιθῶ**
    - **Exception: δίδωμι keeps omega throughout present subjunctive.**
      - **E.g.: διδῶ, διδῷς, διδῷ   (Not διδῶ, διδῆς, διδῇ)**

μι Verb Final Stem Vowel –
Rules for Contracting and Lengthening

- μι verb stems always end in a vowel

- **Final stem vowel never contracts.**
  - **Because no connecting vowel to contract with.**
  - **Exception: Contracts with exceptional infinitive morpheme in 2AAN.**
    - **2AAN infinitive morpheme is εναι, not ναι.**
    - **E.g., 2AAN of δίδωμι is δοῦναι (AA stem is δο)**
- **Final stem vowel lengthens in the following cases:**
  - **Before a tense formative.**
    - **E.g., 1AAI2P of δίδωμι is διδώκαμεν, not διδόκαμεν.**
    - **Exception: Doesn't lengthen in AP and FP.**
      - **E.g., 1API2P of δίδωμι is δοθημεν, not δωθημεν.**
  - **In singular of PA and IA.**
    - **E.g., PAI1S of δίδωμι is διδωμι, not διδομι, even though present tense stem is δο.**

μι Verb Formation Questions (C)

1. How do μι verbs form their present tense stem from the root? (**2 ways**).

2. What special rule applies to roots such as *θε?

3. What patterns are usually used for forming the other tense stems?

4. For some μι verbs, the tense stem formation pattern simplifies parsing.
   For some μι verbs it doesn't.
   What three things can hinder μι verb tense stem recognition?

5. Give the expected tense stems for the μι verb stem *δο,
   including any augment or reduplication.

6. What exception is there to the usual tense formatives?
   To what voices and moods does the exception occur?

7. Give the expected principle parts for the μι verb stem *δο,
   just up through the tense formative
   (skip the CV, MF, and PE at the end of the word).

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**

2. **μι Verbs – Formation Overview**

    2a. Tense Stem Formation Patterns

    2b. Tense Formative Exception

    2c. Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule

    2d. Personal Ending Exceptions

    2e. Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions

7 Exceptions to Personal Endings for μι Verbs Are All Active and Mostly PAI

P#	Primary Active	Secondary Active	Imperative Active
1S	– [μι for μιPAI]	ν [– for 1AAI] [ν or μι for optative]	
2S	ις [ς for TAI & μιPAI]	ς	– [ον for 1AAM] [θι or τι for APM] [– or ε for μιPAM] [θι or ς for μιAAM]
3S	ι [–(ν) for TAI] [σι(ν) for μιPAI]	–(ν) [– for API]	τω
1P	μεν	μεν	
2P	τε	τε	τε
3P	νσι(ν) [νσι(ν) or ν for TAI] [ασι(ν) for μιPAI]	ν [σαν for AP & μιIAI] [σαν or εν for optative]	τωσαν

Example: Inflect δίδωμι in the PAI and PMpI

TVMNP	A?	R?	TS	TF	CV	PE	Form
PAI1S			διδο			μι	δίδωμι
PAI2S			διδο			ς	δίδως
PAI3S			διδο			σι(ν)	δίδωσι(ν)
PAI1P			διδο			μεν	δίδομεν
PAI2P			διδο			τε	δίδοτε
PAI3P			διδο			ασι(ν)	δίδοασι(ν)

TVMNP	A?	R?	TS	TF	CV	PE	Form
PMpI1S			διδο			μαι	δίδομαι
PMpI2S			διδο			σαι	δίδοσαι
PMpI3S			διδο			ται	δίδοται
PMpI1P			διδο			μεθα	διδόμεθα
PMpI2P			διδο			σθε	δίδοσθε
PMpI3P			διδο			νται	δίδονται

Preview of Chapters 34 & 35:
Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**

2. **μι Verbs – Formation Overview**

   2a. **Tense Stem Formation Patterns**

   2b. **Tense Formative Exception**

   2c. **Connecting Vowel Exception & Final Stem Vowel Rule**

   2d. **Personal Ending Exceptions**

   2e. **Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions**

μι **Verb Infinitive Morphemes –**
2 Exceptions

TVM	R?	Stem	TF	CV	Infin Morph	E.g.
PAN		P		ε [– for μι]	εν [ναι for μι]	διδόναι
PMpN		P		ε [– for μι]	σθαι	δίδοσθαι
FAN		F	σ [ες for liq]	ε	εν	δώσειν
FMN		F	σ [ες for liq]	ε	σθαι	δώσεσθαι
1AAN		AA	σα [α for liq]	–	ι	στῆσαι [ἵστημι]
2AAN		AA		ε [– for μι]	εν [εναι for μι]	δοῦναι
1AMN		AA	σα [α for liq]	–	σθαι	στήσασθαι [ἵστημι]
2AMN		AA		ε [– for μι]	σθαι	δόσθαι
TAN	X	TA	κε	–	ναι	δεδωκέναι
TMpN	X	TM		–	σθαι	δεδόσθαι
APN		AP	θη	–	ναι	δοθῆναι
FPN		AP	θησ	ε	σθαι	δοθήσεσθαι

μι Verb Infinitive Inflection Practice

TVM	R?	Stem	TF	CV	Infinitive Morph	E.g.
						δεδόσθαι
						δεδωκέναι
						διδόναι
						δίδοσθαι
						δοθῆναι
						δοθήσεσθαι
						δοῦναι
						δόσθαι
						δώσειν
						δώσεσθαι
						στῆσαι [ἵστημι]
						στήσασθαι [ἵστημι]

Review of Chapters 34 & 35:
Optative Mood and μι Verbs

1. **Optative Mood**
   - **Mood formative (iota or ιη) right before personal ending.**
   - **Secondary personal endings <u>without augment</u>.**

2. **μι Verbs**

   2a. Present Tense Stem = Root or = Iota Reduplication

   2b. Some μι Verbs use κα / κε not σα / σε in 1AAI.
   - **These verbs use 2ⁿᵈ aorist elsewhere.**

   2c. Stem ends in a vowel, so no connecting vowel if would contract.
   - **Final stem vowel lengthens before TF (not AP or FP).**
   - **Final stem vowel lengthens in present and imperfect singular.**

   2d. Seven Personal Ending Exceptions – Mostly in PAI.

   2e. Infinitive Morpheme Exceptions in PAN and 2AAN.

Practice Parsing μι Verbs
Using δίδωμι (*δο)

Form	A?	R?	TS	TF	CV	MF	Ending	Parsing
δίδωμι	–	–	διδο	–	–	–	μι	PAI1S "I am giving"
διδῶ								
δοῦναι								
ἔδωκα								
ἔδωκαν								
διδόναι								
ἔδωκεν								
δέδωκεν								
δώσω								
δῶ								
δέδωκα								
δίδου								
δός								
ἐδίδουν								
διδούς								
δούς								

Answer Key to Practice Parsing μι Verbs
Using δίδωμι (*δο)

Form	A?	R?	TS	TF	CV	MF	Ending	Parsing
δίδωμι	–	–	διδο	–	–	–	μι	PAI1S "I am giving"
διδῶ	–	–	διδο	–	–	–	–	PAS1S "I may give continually"
δοῦναι	–	–	δο	–	–	–	ναι	2AAN "to give"
ἔδωκα	X	–	δο	κα	–	–	–	1AAI1S "I give"
ἔδωκαν	X	–	δο	κα	–	–	ν	1AAI3P "they gave"
διδόναι	–	–	διδο	–	–	–	ναι	PAN "to give continually"
ἔδωκεν	X	–	δο	κε	–	–	ν	1AAI3S "she gave"
δέδωκεν	–	X	δο	κε	–	–	ν	TAI3S "she has given"
δώσω	–	–	δο	σ	ο	–	–	FAI1S "I will give"
δῶ	–	–	δο	–	–	–	–	2AAS1S "I may give"
δέδωκα	–	X	δο	κα	–	–	–	TAI1S "I have given"
δίδου	–	–	διδο	–	–	–	ε	PAM2S "Give continually!"
δός	–	–	δο	–	–	–	ς	2AAM2S "Give!"
ἐδίδουν	X	–	διδο	–	–	–	ν	IAI3P "They were giving"
διδούς	–	–	διδο	–	–	–	υς [ντς]	PAPMSN "While giving"
δούς	–	–	δο	–	–	–	υς [ντς]	2AAPMSN "After he gave"

Roadmap of Review Lecture

The "Morphology Summary" handout summarizes parsing in 2 pages.
This lecture explains the handout and reviews basic grammar.
If you understand and memorize the handout,
you can parse almost anything!

1. **Parsing Codes & Their Meaning**

2. **Word Formation**

    2a. **Letter Changes: Table of Stops, Contraction, etc.**

    2b. **Noun & Adjective Formation**

    2c. **Verb Formation**

3. **Next Steps**

Parsing Codes

Table 1

Tense	P = Present	F = Future	T = Perfect
	I = Imperfect	A = Aorist	L = Pluperfect
			R = Future Perfect
Voice	A = Active	Mp = Middle or Passive	Md = Middle Deponent
	M = Middle		Pd = Passive deponent
	P = Passive		Mpd = (M or P) Deponent
Mood	I = Indicative	M = Imperative	P = Participle
	S = Subjunctive	O = Optative	N = Infinitive
Person	1 = 1st Person	2 = 2nd Person	3 = 3rd Person
Gender	M = Masculine	N = Neuter	Mn = Masculine or Neuter
	F = Feminine		Mfn = M, F, or N
Number	S = Singular	P = Plural	
Case	N = Nominative	A = Accusative	Na = N or A, etc.
	G = Genitive	V = Vocative	Nx = Indeclinable used as N
	D = Dative		G! = Genitive emphatic form

Explain These Parsing Codes

1. **PAI1S**   **= Present Active Indicative 1st-Person Singular**

2. **PMpI2P**

3. **AMI3P**

4. **AMdI3P**

5. **TMpdI2S**

6. **PAS1S**

7. **PAPMSN**

8. **PAN**

9. **AAM3P**

10. **AAO2S**

11. **FSG**

12. **NSNa**

13. **MSV**

14. **MSNx**

15. **SG!**

Case –
Indicator of Word's Relationship to Verb

Nominative Case ("N")	• E.g., "<u>Ann</u> loves Jesus." (Subject) • E.g., "Jesus is <u>lord</u>." (Predicate nominative)
Genitive Case ("G")	• E.g., "This is the book <u>of me</u>." [my book] (Possession) • E.g., "The state <u>of Minnesota</u>" (Description) • E.g., "While <u>she</u> prayed, Jesus listened." (Genitive Absolute)
Dative Case ("D")	• E.g., "Bob gave <u>Joe</u> the tract." (Indirect Object) • E.g., "He witnessed <u>by means of a tract</u>." (Means)
Accusative Case ("A")	• E.g., "Bob gave Joe <u>the tract</u>." (Direct Object) • E.g., "What does Jesus want <u>her</u> to say?" (Subject of infinitive)
Vocative Case ("V")	• E.g., "Come, <u>Lord Jesus</u>!" (Direct Address)

- **Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and participles have case.**
- **Words with case always use case endings, except for indeclinable words.**
- **Many uses besides those above – See Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*.**

Verb Tense Indicates Aspect and Maybe Time

	Past	Present	Future
Undefined Aspect	Aorist ("A")	Present ("P")	Future ("F")
Continuous Aspect	Imperfect ("I")	Present ("P")	Future ("F")?
Perfect Aspect	Pluperfect ("L")	Perfect ("T")	Future Perfect ("R")

- **<u>Aspect</u>: Tense almost always indicates aspect.**
- **<u>Time</u>: Tense indicates absolute time only in the indicative mood.**
    - **"Absolute time" = time relative to the writer/speaker.**
    - **Participle tense indicates time relative to the main verb.**
    - **Indicative mood needs all tenses to indicate all combinations of aspect & time.**
- **Outside of the indicative mood, only the circled tenses exist.**
    - **One tense per aspect + the future.**
    - **Future tense does not occur in the subjunctive or imperative moods.**

Verb Voice –
Does the Subject Do or Receive the Action?

- **Active voice ("A"):**
  - **The subject of the verb does the action.**
  - **E.g., "I hit the ball"**
    - **"I" is the subject.**
    - **"hit" is the verb.**
    - **The subject ("I") <u>does</u> the action of hitting the ball.**
- **Middle voice ("M"):**
  - **Same as active voice, except that the action also affects the subject.**
    - **E.g., "I hit the ball for my own benefit."**
    - **E.g., "I hit myself with the ball."**
- **Passive voice ("P"):**
  - **The subject of the verb receives the action.**
    - **E.g., "I was hit by the ball."**
      - **"I" is the subject.**
      - **"hit" is the verb.**
      - **The subject ("I") <u>receives</u> the action of hitting the ball.**

Verb Voice –
Deponent Verbs

- **Middle Deponent ("Md")**
  - **A middle-deponent verb is middle in form, but active in meaning.**
- **Passive Deponent ("Pd")**
  - **A passive-deponent verb is passive in form, but active in meaning.**
- **Middle-Passive Deponent ("Mpd")**
  - **A middle-passive-deponent verb is in a form that is middle or passive (indistinguishable), but active in meaning.**

- **A function of tense stem.**
  - **E.g., If a verb is deponent in the present, it is deponent in the imperfect, because the imperfect uses the present tense stem.**
- **Independent of mood.**
  - **E.g., Deponent in present indicative ➜
    Deponent in present subjunctive, present imperative,
    present optative, present participles, and present infinitive.**
- **Verbs can only be Mpd in certain tenses.**
  - **Mpd only possible if middle and passive forms are identical.**
    - **Present tense (and imperfect)**
    - **Perfect tense (and pluperfect and future perfect)**

Verb Mood –
Portrayal of Verb's Relationship to Reality

Indicative Mood ("I")	**Issues of reality** • E.g., "Amy loves Jesus." (Declaration) • E.g., "Do you love Jesus, Amy?" (Question)
Subjunctive Mood ("S")	**Uncertain things** • E.g., "Let us love Jesus." (Exhortation) • E.g., "Do we really love Jesus?" (Deliberative Question) • E.g., "Witness so that they will love Jesus." (Purpose)
Imperative Mood ("M")	**Commands, requests** • E.g., "Love Jesus!" (Command) • E.g., "Please love Jesus!" (Request)
Optative Mood ("O")	**Uncertain things: wishes, prayers, hopes** • E.g., "O that Amy would love Jesus!" (Wish, Prayer, Hope)

1. **What cases exist in Greek? What do they mean?**
2. **Which tenses go in the boxes below?**
3. **For each box below, write "Jesus loves me" with the indicated aspect and time.**
4. **What happens to time outside of the indicative mood?**
5. **What tenses exist outside of the indicative mood? Why?**
6. **What voices exist in Greek? What do they mean?**
7. **What moods exist in Greek? What do they mean?**

	Past	**Present**	**Future**
Undefined Aspect			
Continuous Aspect			
Perfect Aspect			

Roadmap of Review Lecture

1. **Parsing Codes & Their Meaning**

2. **Word Formation**

   2a. **Letter Changes: Table of Stops, Contraction, etc.**

   2b. **Noun & Adjective Formation**

   2c. **Verb Formation**

3. **Next Steps**

Table of Stops & Other Consonant Changes

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate	+ σ	+ θ	Reduplicated aspirate
Labial	π	β	φ	ψ	φθ	φ ➜ πεφ
Velar	κ	γ	χ	ξ	χθ	χ ➜ κεχ
Dental	τ	δ	θ	σ	σθ	θ ➜ τεθ

- **Table of stops:**
  - **E.g., βλεπ + σω ➜ βλέψω**
  - **E.g., βλεπ + θησω ➜ βλεφθήσω**
  - **E.g., reduplicate θι ➜ τεθι**
- **Tau drops off if last letter of word.**
  - **E.g., ὄναματ ➜ ὄναμα**
- **Nu drops off before sigma.**
  - **E.g., πανς ➜ παν**

Vowel Changes

- **Forms ending in εας, ιας, or ρας could be either FPA or FSG.**
  - **All other forms ending in ας are FPA.**
  - **Why?**
    - **Eta in singular ➜ Alpha in plural.**
      - **E.g., γραφή is FSN, but γραφαί is FPN.**
        - **This distinguishes γραφῆς (FSG) from γραφάς (FPA).**
    - **Alpha ➜ Eta in the SG & SD except if preceded by ε, ι, or ρ.**
      - **E.g., δόξα is FSN, but δόξης is FSG.**
        - **This distinguishes δόξης (FSG) from δόξας (FPA).**

- **A vowel lengthens when one or more letters after it drop out.**
  - **Exceptions: NSNa and TAPMnPD participles don't lengthen.**
  - **ε ➜ ει* (spurious diphthong)**
  - **o ➜ ου* (spurious diphthong)**
    - **Exception: o ➜ ω in MSN participles**

Questions –
Consonant and Vowel Changes

1. **Fill in the table of stops below.**
2. **What happens to βλεπσω? Why?**
3. **What happens to βλεπθησω? Why?**
4. **What happens to ὀναματ? Why?**
5. **What happens to πανς? Why?**
6. **Given that FSG or FPN both end in ς, parse δόξας and explain why.**
7. **Given that FSG or FPN both end in ς, parse γραφῆς and explain why.**
8. **What happens to λόγονς? Why?**

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate	+ σ	+ θ	Reduplicated aspirate
Labial						
Velar						
Dental						

Rules For Contracting Single Vowels

	Short Vowel	**Spurious Diphthong**	**Long Vowel**
A-Type	short α	doesn't exist	long α
E-Type	ε	ει*	η
O-Type	ο	ου*	ω

- **Contraction ➔ Long vowel column**
    - **Exception: (εε, οο, εο, οε) ➔ spurious diphthong (ει* or ου*).**
- **Contraction ➔ Row of vowel that came first**
    - **Exception: O-Type (bottom row) if either starting vowel is O-Type.**
- **Spurious diphthong: ει or ου if created by previous contraction or lengthening.**
    - **Indicate spurious with asterisk: ει* and ου***
- **Iota and upsilon don't contract.**
- **Final stem vowel of μι verbs doesn't contract except with AAN morpheme εναι.**
- **Examples:**
    - αε ➔ α   **(Long-Vowel Column, A-Type Row)**
    - εα ➔ η   **(Long-Vowel Column, E-Type Row)**
    - οε ➔ ου*   **(Spurious Diphthong Column, E-Type Row)**
    - οα ➔ ω   **(Long-Vowel Column, O-Type Row)**

1. **Fill in the table below.**
2. **What vowels aren't in the table? Why?**
3. **In what row is the result of contraction?**
4. **In what column is the result of contraction?**
5. **What is a spurious diphthong? How can you tell if a diphthong is spurious or not?**

	Short Vowel	Spurious Diphthong	Long Vowel
A-Type			
E-Type			
O-Type			

Contracting Single Vowels

- **Fill in the table below.**
  - **The left column is the first letter. The top row is the second letter.**

	Short α	Long α	ε	η	ι	υ	ο	ω
Short α								
Long α								
ε								
η								
ι								
υ								
ο								
ω								

Answer Key to Practice – Contracting Single Vowels

- **Fill in the table below.**
    - **The left column is the first letter. The top row is the second letter.**

	Short α	**Long α**	**ε**	**η**	**ι**	**υ**	**ο**	**ω**
Short α	**Long α**	**Long α**	**Long α**	**Long α**	αι	αυ	ω	ω
Long α	**Long α**	**Long α**	**Long α**	**Long α**	ᾳ	αυ	ω	ω
ε	η	η	ει*	η	ει	ευ	ου*	ω
η	η	η	η	η	ῃ	ηυ	ω	ω
ι	ια	ια	ιε	ιη	ιι	ιυ	ιο	ιω
υ	υα	υα	υε	υη	υι	υυ	υο	υω
ο	ω	ω	ου*	ω	οι	ου	ου*	ω
ω	ω	ω	ω	ω	ῳ	ωυ	ω	ω

Rules for Contracting
Table 7
A Single Vowel Followed by a Diphthong

1. **First, delete the second letter of the diphthong**
   IF the diphthong is υι, ει*, or ου*.
   - **Otherwise just keep the second letter of the diphthong.**
   - **Since the second letter of a diphthong is always iota or upsilon, the second letter of the diphthong will tack on or subscript, following the usual rules.**

2. **Second, contract the single vowel with the first vowel of the diphthong, just as if they were two single vowels.**

3. **Third, if you end up with three letters, then delete the middle letter so that the result will have only two letters.**

4. **Caveat: The combination ο + η contracts to ῳ according to the rules, but usually (not always) it contracts to οι instead, as if it were ο + ει.**

Start	ααι	ωην	αυι	ηει*	ηει	αει*	αει	οου*	οου
Step 1			αυ	ηε			αε		οο
Step 2	ᾳ	ωυ		η	ῃ	α	ᾳ	ου*	ου*υ
Step 3									ου

Contracting A Single Vowel With a Diphthong

- These questions refer to contracting a single vowel with a following diphthong.

1. Under what circumstances do you begin by deleting the second vowel of the diphthong?

2. Which two letters do you contract?

3. What do you do if you end up with three letters?

4. What is the exception to the rules?

5. Fill in the table for a single vowel (left column) followed by a diphthong (top row).

	αι	ᾳ	ει	ει*	οι	αυ	ου	ου*	υι	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
long α													
short α													
ε													
η													
ο													
ω													

Contracting A Single Vowel With a Diphthong

- These questions refer to contracting a single vowel with a following diphthong.
1. Under what circumstances do you begin by deleting the second vowel of the diphthong? When the diphthong is spurious or υι.
2. Which two letters do you contract? The single vowel with the first letter of the diphthong.
3. What do you do if you end up with three letters? Delete the middle letter.
4. What is the exception to the rules? ο + ῃ ➔ ῳ by the rules, but often ➔ οι.

	αι	ᾳ	ει	ει*	οι	αυ	ου	ου*	υι	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
long α	ᾳ	ᾳ	ᾳ	α	ῳ	αυ	ωυ	ω	αυ	αυ	αυ	ᾳ	ῳ
short α	ᾳ	ᾳ	ᾳ	α	ῳ	αυ	ωυ	ω	αυ	αυ	αυ	ᾳ	ῳ
ε	ῃ	ῃ	ει	ει*	οι	ηυ	ου	ου*	ευ	ευ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
η	ῃ	ῃ	ῃ	η	ῳ	ηυ	ωυ	ω	ηυ	ηυ	ηυ	ῃ	ῳ
ο	ῳ	ῳ	οι	ου*	οι	ωυ	ου	ου*	ου	ου	ωυ	ῳ / οι	ῳ
ω	ῳ	ῳ	ῳ	ω	ῳ	ωυ	ωυ	ω	ωυ	ωυ	ωυ	ῳ	ῳ

Roadmap of Review Lecture

1. **Parsing Codes & Their Meaning**

2. **Word Formation**

   2a. **Letter Changes: Table of Stops, Contraction, etc.**

   2b. **Noun & Adjective Formation**

   2c. **Verb Formation**

3. **Next Steps**

Noun & Adjective Formation – Pieces

Stem	Case Ending	Inflected Form
E.g., λογο	ς	λόγος is MSN

- **Declension:**
    - **A set of case endings.**
    - **There are 3 declensions, and 3 sets of case endings.**

- **3 Declensions**
    - **1st declension: stem ends in alpha or eta.**
    - **2nd declension: stem ends in omicron.**
    - **3rd declension: stem ends in a consonant.**

Noun / Adjective Formation – **Table 8**
Case Endings

Declension	1	2	3
SN	– [ς for M]	ς	ς [– if stem ends in ν, ρ, σ, or οντ]
SG	ς [ου for M]	υ	ος
SD	ι	ι	ι
SA	ν	ν	α [ν if stem ends in ι̯ or ϝ, or some ιτ, ιδ, or ιθ]
SV	–	ε	–
PN / PV	ι	ι	ες
PG	ων	ων	ων
PD	ις	ις	σι(ν)
PA	ς	υς	ας [ες if stem ends in ι̯]

- **Neuter SN/SA/SV ends in "ν" or "–" in 2ⁿᵈ declension, and in "–" in 3ʳᵈ declension.**
- **Neuter PN/PA/PV always ends in "α"**

1. Define 1ˢᵗ declension, 2ⁿᵈ declension, and 3ʳᵈ declension.
2. Fill in the table below, including the exceptions.

Declension	1	2	3
SN			
SG			
SD			
SA			
SV			
PN / PV			
PG			
PD			
PA			

Practice –
Parsing Nouns and Adjectives

1. γραφάς   (γραφής **FPA** "writings")
2. δόξας   (δόξα **FPA** "glories")
3. ὥρας   (ὥρα **FSG** "of an hour" or **FPA** "hours")
4. λόγοις   (λόγος **MPNv** "words")
5. λόγε   (λόγος **MSV** "word")
6. πᾶς   (πᾶς **MSN** "all")
7. παντός   (πᾶς **MnSG** "of all")
8. πάντα   (πᾶς **NPNav** "all")
9. πᾶσι   (πᾶς **MnPD** "to all")

Roadmap of Review Lecture

1. **Parsing Codes & Their Meaning**

2. **Word Formation**

    2a. **Letter Changes: Table of Stops, Contraction, etc.**

    2b. **Noun & Adjective Formation**

    2c. **Verb Formation**

3. **Next Steps**

Verb Formation – Pieces

- **Finite verbs**   **(Has person, so has PE)**

TVM	Aug	Red	TS	TF	CV	MF	PE	Inflected form
1TAI		X	TA	κα / κε			PA	
E.g., TAI1P of λύω		λε	λυ	κα			μεν	λελύκαμεν

- **Participles**   **(Has case, so has CE) (Not Finite, so has Morph)**

TVM	Aug	Red	TS	TF	CV	Morph	CE	Inflected form
1TAP		X	TA	κ	ο	τ / υια	**3-2-3**	
E.g., TAPMPN of λύω		λε	λυ	κ	ο	τ	ες	λελυκότες

- **Infinitives**   **(Not Finite, so has Morph)**

TVM	Aug	Red	TS	TF	CV	Morph	Inflected form
1TAN		X	TA	κ	ε	ναι	
E.g., TAN of λύω		λε	λυ	κ	ε	ναι	λελυκέναι

- **When?**
  - **Absolute past time only**
    - **Indicative mood only**   **(Absolute time)**
    - **Aorist, Imperfect, and Pluperfect tenses only**   **(Past time)**
  - **Pluperfect tense sometimes doesn't augment**
    - **Because it already has reduplication at the front**
- **Where?**
  - **Front of verb**   (λυ ➜ ἐλυ)
  - **Between preposition and verb stem**   (ἀπολυ ➜ ἀπελυ)
- **How?**
  - **Initial vowel ➜ Lengthen vowel**   **(See table below)**
  - **Initial consonant ➜ Prepend epsilon**   (λυ ➜ ἐλυ)
  - **Initial diphthong ➜ Lengthen first letter or do nothing**   (αἰτε ➜ ᾐτε)

α	α	ἀγαπα ➜ ἠγαπα
ε	η	ἐρωτα ➜ ἠρωτα
ι	ι	ἰσχυ ➜ ἰσχυ
ο	ω	ὀφειλ ➜ ὠφειλ
υ	υ	ὑγιαιν ➜ ὑγιαιν

- **When?**
  - **Perfect aspect only**
    - **Pluperfect (sometimes), perfect, and future perfect tenses only**
    - **Any mood.**
- **Where?**
  - **Right before tense stem (after augment)**   (λυ ➜ λελυ)
  - **Between preposition and verb stem**   (ἀπολυ ➜ ἀπολελυ)
- **How?**
  - **Initial vowel or diphthong ➜ Just like augment.**
  - **Initial consonant ➜ Repeat and separate with epsilon**   (λυ ➜ λελυ)
    - **Except most initial consonant clusters ➜ Prepend epsilon**   (γνο ➜ ἐγνο)
    - **Initial aspirate ➜ Repeated consonant is unvoiced**   (See table below)

	Unvoiced	Voiced	Aspirate	+ σ	+ θ	Reduplicated aspirate
Labial	π	β	φ	ψ	φθ	φ ➜ πεφ
Velar	κ	γ	χ	ξ	χθ	χ ➜ κεχ
Dental	τ	δ	θ	σ	σθ	θ ➜ τεθ

- **When?**
  - **Always have TS**
- **Where?**
  - **TS always after augment & reduplication, but before TF and CV.**
- **What?**
  - **TS always same for a particular tense-voice   (Independent of mood)**
    - **Always derived from the verb root.**
    - **Must memorize if can't recognize from the lexical form and root.**
  - **Many μι verbs have easy-to-recognize tense stems.**
    - **Present: διδο, Future δο, Aorist ἐδο, Perfect δεδο.**

Tense and Voice ("TV")	Tense Stem ("TS")
Present Active ("PA")	Present ("P")
Present Middle or Passive ("PMp")	Present ("P")
Imperfect Active ("IA")	Present ("P")
Imperfect Middle or Passive ("IMp")	Present ("P")
Future Active ("FA")	Future Active ("FA")
Future Middle ("FM")	Future Active ("FA")
Aorist Active ("AA") – Both 1AA and 2AA	Aorist Active ("AA")
Aorist Middle ("AM") – Both 1AM and 2AM	Aorist Active ("AA")
Perfect Active ("TA") – Both 1TA and 2TA	Perfect Active ("TA")
Pluperfect Active ("LA") – Both 1LA and 2LA	Perfect Active ("TA")
Future Perfect Active ("RA")	Perfect Active ("TA")
Perfect Middle-Passive ("TMp")	Perfect Middle-Passive ("TMp")
Pluperfect Middle-Passive ("LMp")	Perfect Middle-Passive ("TMp")
Future Perfect Middle-Passive ("RMp")	Perfect Middle-Passive ("TMp")
Aorist Passive ("AP")	Aorist Passive ("AP")
Future Passive ("FP")	Aorist Passive ("AP")

- **What?**
  - **The 6 principle parts are 6 verb forms.**
    - **i.e., PAI1S, FAI1S, AAI1S, TAI1S, TMpI1S, API1S**
    - **E.g., λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην**
  - **They are particular to each verb, and hence part of the vocabulary.**
  - **Some verbs never occur in tenses that use a particular principle part, and so the principle part is blank ("—") in the vocabulary.**
- **Why?**
  - **The principle parts exemplify the 6 tense stems for the verb.**
  - **The principle parts help indicate in which tenses a verb is deponent.**

- **How use?**
  - **When memorizing a verb, check the principle parts.**
    - **If you can't recognize the principle part from the lexical form:**
      - **Memorizing the root should enable you to recognize most principle parts.**
      - **Memorize the principle part if you have to.**
        - **E.g., ἤχθην is the 1API1S of ἄγω, with γ + θ ➔ χθ by the table of stops.**
        - **Mounce (pp. 374-385) underlines the principle parts that you may need to memorize.**
- **Some principle parts must be memorized.**
  - **E.g., Memorize to distinguish words:**
    - **γεννάω ("I beget") always has νν**
    - **γινώσκω ("I know") has γν outside of the present**
    - **γίνομαι ("I become") never has νν or γν.**
- **Learn to recognize principle parts of the 9 verbs with multiple roots.**
  - **ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα, –, –**
  - **ἐσθίω, φάγομαι, ἔφαγον, –, –, –**
  - **λέγω, ἐρῶ, εἶπον, εἴρηκα, εἴρημαι, ἐρρέθην**
  - **ὁράω, ὄψομαι, εἶδον / ὠψάμην, ἑώρακα, –, ὤφθην**

- **When?**
  - **Some tense-voice combinations use a TF, some don't.**
- **Where?**
  - **TF is always immediately after TS**
- **What?**
  - **TF is usually the same in all moods and verbs.**
    - **Exceptions in certain moods.**
    - **Exceptions for liquid verbs**
      - **Liquid means TS ends with λ, μ, ν, or ρ   ("Liquids May Not Run")**
      - **Different TF for liquid verb if TF begins with sigma**
        - **1AA, 1AM, FA, FM, RA, RMp**
    - **If indicative mood TF has multiple letters and begins with a consonant, there is a second form which drops the initial consonant of the TF.**
      - **AA, AM, TA, LA, AP, and FP have 1st and 2nd forms**
      - **Exception: 2AA and 2AM drop TF completely.**
    - **Always drop final vowel of TF in subjunctive mood.**
      - **Because always have CV in subjunctive mood.**
    - **If TF ends in alpha, then alpha ➔ epsilon in active indicative 3S.**
      - **Only affects 1AAI3S and TAI3S.**

Tense Stem ("TS") & Tense Formative ("TF")

TV	TS	Default TF	Exceptions to the default TF in various moods					
			I	P	S	N	M	O
PA	P	–						
PMp	P	–						
IA	P	–		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////
IMp	P	–		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////
FA	FA	σ [εσ liquid]			/////		/////	
FM	FA	σ [εσ liquid]			/////		/////	
1AA	AA	σα [α liquid]	κα some μι, α ➔ ε for 3S		σ [None liquid]			
1AM	AA	σα [α liquid]			σ [None liquid]			
2AA	AA	–						
2AM	AA	–						
TA	TA	κ	κα, except κε for 3S					
LA	TA	κει		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////
RA	TA	σ [εσ liquid]		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////
TMp	TMp	–						
LMp	TMp	–		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////
RMp	TMp	σ [εσ liquid]		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////
AP	AP	θη		θε	θ			θε
FP	AP	θησ		/////	/////	/////	/////	/////

- **When?**
  - **Ω Verbs**   **(a.k.a. thematic verbs)**
    - **Always unless:**
      - **(1) TF ends in a vowel**
      - **(2) Perfect middle-passive**
      - **(3) Pluperfect middle-passive**
  - **μι Verbs**   **(a.k.a. athematic verbs)**
    - **Never unless TF ends in a consonant**
  - **Always use a CV in subjunctive mood**   **(Long CV is sign of subjunctive)**

- **Where?**
  - **Immediately after TF**

- **What?**

Indicative	Participle	Subjunctive	Infinitive	Imperative	Optative
ο, ε, ε, ο, ε, ο	ο	ω, η, η, ω, η, ω	ε	ε	ο

- **When?**
  - **Always in optative mood.**
  - **Never in any other mood.**

- **Where?**
  - **Immediately before the personal ending.**

- **What?**
  - **Either iota or ιη.**   **(No need to memorize when use iota vs. ιη)**

- **When?**
  - **Always in finite verbs**
    - **Finite verbs have person.**
    - **Indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and optative moods are finite.**
  - **Never in non-finite verbs**
    - **Non-finite verbs lack person.**
    - **Participles and infinitives are non-finite.**
- **Where?**
  - **Always at the end of the verb form.**
- **What?**
  - **Active vs. passive:**
    - **Active ("A") used in active voice and aorist passive.**
    - **Middle ("M") used everywhere else.**
  - **Primary vs. secondary vs. imperative**
    - **Secondary ("S") used in absolute past time and optative**
      - **Absolute past time requires indicative mood, and aorist, imperfect, or pluperfect tense.**
    - **Imperative ("M") used in imperative mood.**
    - **Primary ("P") used everywhere else.**

Verb Formation –
Active Personal Endings

Table 3

P#	Primary Active	Secondary Active	Imperative Active	μι verbs PAI
1S	–	ν [– for 1AAI] [μι for some optative]	/////////	μι
2S	ις [ς for TAI]	ς	– [ον for 1AAM] [θι or τι for APM] [– or ε for μιPAM] [θι or ς for μιAAM]	ς
3S	ι [–(ν) for TAI]	–(ν) [– for API]	τω	σι(ν)
1P	μεν	μεν	/////////	μεν
2P	τε	τε	τε	τε
3P	νσι(ν) [ν for some TAI]	ν [σαν for API] [σαν or εν for optative]	τωσαν	ασι(ν)

Verb Formation –
Middle Personal Endings

Table 3

P#	Primary Middle	Secondary Middle	Imperative Middle
1S	μαι	μην	/////
2S	σαι	σο	σο [ι 1AMM]
3S	ται	το	σθω
1P	μεθα	μεθα	/////
2P	σθε	σθε	σθε
3P	νται	ντο	σθωσαν

- **When?**
  - **Non-finite verbs use morphemes**   **(i.e., participles & infinitives)**
- **Where?**
  - **Immediately before any ending**
    - **Participle morpheme immediately before case ending.**
    - **Infinitive morpheme at end, because no ending.**
- **What?**
  - **Participle Morpheme:**
    - **Active: ντ (M&N) / νσα (F)**
      - **Perfect active: τ (M&N) / υια (F)**
      - **Aorist passive uses the active morphemes**
    - **Middle: μενο (M&N) / μενη (F)**
      - **Note that μενη ➜ μενα in the plural**
        - **Follows rule that stems ending in eta ➜ alpha in plural.**
  - **Infinitive Morpheme:**
    - **Active: εν**
      - **Exception: 1AAN uses ι**
      - **Exception: TAN, APN, and μι verbs in the PAN use ναι**
      - **Exception: μι2AAN uses εναι, and the epsilon contracts!**
    - **Middle: σθαι**

Verb Formation – Morphemes ("Morph") (Table 12)

	M&N Participle Morph	**F Participle Morph**	**Infinitive Morph**
PA	ντ	νσα	εν ➔ [ναι for μιPAN] ⬅
PMp	μενο	μενη	σθαι
FA	ντ	νσα	εν
FM	μενο	μενη	σθαι
1AA	ντ	νσα	➔ ι ⬅
1AM	μενο	μενη	σθαι
2AA	ντ	νσα	εν ➔ [εναι for μι2AAN] ⬅
2AM	μενο	μενη	σθαι
TA	➔ τ ⬅	➔ <u>υ</u>ια ⬅	➔ ναι ⬅
TMp	μενο	μενη	σθαι
AP	ντ	νσα	➔ ναι ⬅
FP	μενο	μενη	σθαι

Parsing Tips

- Guess at the lexical form.
- Look for a unique tense stem.
  - If the tense stems differ, it is easy to find the tense.
  - E.g., δίδως uses unique present tense stem διδο.
- Look for augment.
  - Augment implies imperfect, aorist, or pluperfect indicative.
- Look for reduplication.
  - Reduplication implies perfect aspect.
- Look for tense formative.
  - Aorist passive TF (θη) and future passive TF (θης) are easy to spot.
- Look for morpheme or type of endings.
  - Secondary personal endings imply optative or else I-I, A-I, or L-I.
  - ων is either plural genitive or -APMSN.
- Mood formative and secondary endings without augment ➜ optative.

Questions –
Verb Formation

1. What does augment mean? When does it occur?
2. Augment the following and explain the augment: α, ε, ι, υ, ευ, λ, γν.
3. What does reduplication mean? When does it occur?
4. Reduplicate the following and explain the form: α, ε, ι, υ, ευ, λ, γν, φ.
5. List the principle parts in order.
6. What is the purpose of the principle parts?
7. What makes the tense stems of many μι verbs easy to recognize?
8. Parse ἤχθη, and explain how it got that form.
9. What is a liquid verb? How are liquid verbs formed differently?
10. What is the rule to create the 2nd form of a tense? What is the exception?
11. What is the rule to create the tense formative in the subjunctive?
12. When are connecting vowels used?
13. What connecting vowels are used in the different moods?
14. What mood formatives exist, and when are they used?
15. When are personal endings used?
16. When are active vs. middle personal endings used?
17. When are primary vs. secondary vs. imperative personal endings used?
18. When are morphemes used?
19. What is a form that ends in ων likely to be?
20. What are the clues for the optative?

Practice –
Parsing Verbs

1. λύω   (λύω **PAIs1S "I am loosing" or "I may be loosing"**)
2. λύομεν   (λύω **PAI1P "We are loosing"**)
3. λύωμεν   (λύω **PAS1P "Let us loose"**)
4. λύουσι   (λύω **PAI3P "They are loosing" or PAPMnPD "While loosing"**)
5. ἔλυον   (λύω **IAI1S "I was loosing" or IAI3P "They were loosing"**)
6. ἔλυεν   (λύω **IAI3S "He/She/It was loosing"**)
7. ἔλυσαν   (λύω **AAI3P "They loosed"**)
8. λυσῃ   (λύω **FMI2S or AAS3S or AMS2S**)
9. λυθήσῃ   (λύω **FPI2S "You will be loosed"**)
10. ἐλύθη   (λύω **AAI3S "He/She/It was loosed"**)
11. λυθῶ   (λύω **APS1S "I may be loosed"**)
12. λυσάσθω (λύω **AMM3S "He/She/It must loose for himself"**)
13. λῦσαι   (λύω **AAN "To loose"**)
14. λύων   (λύω **PAPMSN "While loosing"**)
15. λύσας   (λύω **AAPMSN "After he loosed"**)
16. λελυκότι (λύω **TAPMnSD "After he/it loosed"**)
17. λυθεῖσα (λύω **APPFSN "After she was loosed"**)
18. λυόμενον (λύω **PMpPMSA or PMpPNSNa**)

More Practice –
Parsing Verbs

1. λέλυκα   (λύω **TAI1S** "I have loosed")
2. λῦε   (λύω **PAM2S** "Be loosing!")
3. ἔλαβον   (λαμβάνω **AAI1S** "He/she/it took" or **AAI3P** "They took")
4. ἐγραφη   (γράφω **API3S** "He/She/It was written")
5. βαλέτω   (βάλλω **AAM3S** "He/she/it must throw")
6. δίδωσι   (δίδωμι **PAI3S** "He/she/it is giving")
7. διδόασι   (δίδωμι **PAI3P** "They are giving")
8. δίδοσαι   (δίδωμι **PMpI2S** "You are giving for yourself / being given")
9. ἐδίδουν   (δίδωμι **IAI1S** "I was giving")
10. δώσομεν   (δίδωμι **FAI1P** "We will give")
11. ἔδωκα   (δίδωμι **AAI1S** "I gave")
12. δεδωκα   (δίδωμι **TAI1S** "I have given")

Roadmap of Review Lecture

1. **Parsing Codes & Their Meaning**

2. **Word Formation**

    2a. **Letter Changes: Table of Stops, Contraction, etc.**

    2b. **Noun & Adjective Formation**

    2c. **Verb Formation**

3. **Next Steps**

What to Memorize with Vocabulary

1. **Noun Vocabulary**
   - **Memorize: SN article, Lexical form, SG article, SG form.**
     - **E.g., "ὁ λόγος, τοῦ λόγου, word, Word, statement, message."**
   - **Scan the other inflected forms. If you see one that you wouldn't be able to parse, learn the rule if there is one, otherwise semi-memorize it enough to be able to parse it when you see it.**

2. **Verb Vocabulary**
   - **Memorize lexical form.**
   - **Scan the principle parts. If you see one that you wouldn't be able to parse, learn the rule if there is one, otherwise memorize it enough to be able to parse it when you see it.**
     - **Mounce (2nd ed) pp. 385-395 underlines the principle parts to memorize.**
     - **E.g., I've memorized "ἐσθίω, φάγομαι, ἔφαγον, I eat."**
   - **Memorize if it is deponent in any tense stem.**
   - **Memorize if it takes a direct object in a case other than accusative.**

3. **Special Words – Treat all the forms of these as separate vocabulary words:**
   - **ὁ and ὅς**
   - **ἐγώ, σύ, αὐτός, and οὗτος**
   - **εἰμί**

A Road Map From Here

- **Understand & Memorize the rules in this review lecture**
  - **Put the *Koine Morphology Summary* in long-term, down-cold memory.**
- **Read Greek Daily**
  - **Read at least one verse of the GNT every day.**
- **Take 2ⁿᵈ Year Greek Class**
  - **You now know enough to be dangerous. Take 2ⁿᵈ year to become safer!**
  - **Learn to study the GNT with sentence diagramming & arcing.**
- **Read Wallace, *Greek Grammar Beyond the Basics*.**
  - **Even if you don't memorize it, it is useful to have the concept of 33 different uses for the genitive, and to have it for reference.**
- **Memorize vocabulary down to 10.**
  - **Use Trenchard, *Complete Vocabulary Guide for the Greek New Testament*, to memorize vocabulary down to a NT frequency of 10.**
- **Optional:**
  - **Mounce, *Morphology of Biblical Greek*, Zondervan 1984.**
  - **Carson, *Greek Accents*, Baker 1985.**
- **Don't pull rank or overstate your conclusions.**
- **Worship by means of studying the Bible, and then heeding what you've learned.**

τετέλεσται!